

Korean

headstart



KOREAN HEADSTART



Gyeongbok Palace re-enactment of Sejong the Great's enthronement

Photo: David McNally, USAG-Yongsan
Date: 17 Jul 2008
Photo Courtesy of U.S. Army
US Public Domain

NOVEMBER 1984
FIRST EDITION

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

Note: original images in this book have been replaced with Creative Commons or public domain equivalent images. The DLIFL is not associated with these changes. Jan 2011.

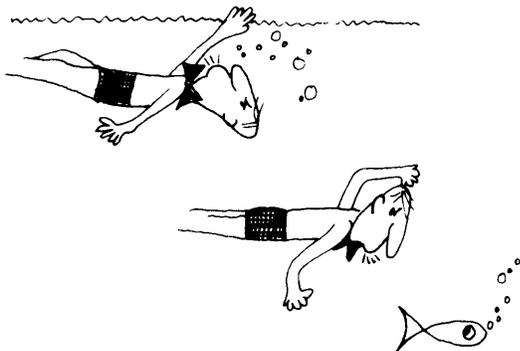
CONTENTS

STUDENT GUIDE	1
TAPE INDEX	7
INTRODUCTION TO KOREAN GRAMMAR	9
INTRODUCTION TO KOREAN SOUNDS	10
UNIT 1 GREETINGS AND INTRODUCTIONS	12
Lesson 1	14
Rank Insignia Charts	22
Lesson 2	24
Lesson 3	32
Lesson 4	42
Unit 1 Self-evaluation Quiz	50
UNIT 2 NUMBERS AND MONEY	52
Lesson 1	54
Lesson 2	66
Lesson 3	76
Unit 2 Self-evaluation Quiz	86
UNIT 3 SHOPPING	88
Lesson 1	90
Lesson 2	100
Lesson 3	110
Unit 3 Self-evaluation Quiz	120
UNIT 4 TIME AND DATES	122
Lesson 1	124
Lesson 2	136
Lesson 3	144
Unit 4 Self-evaluation Quiz	150
UNIT 5 EVERYDAY CONVERSATION	152
Lesson 1	154
Lesson 2	168
Lesson 3	180
Unit 5 Self-evaluation Quiz	190

UNIT 6 DIRECTIONS	192
Lesson 1.....	194
Lesson 2	204
Lesson 3.....	214
Unit 6 Self-evaluation Quiz	224
UNIT 7 RESTAURANTS AND FOOD	226
Lesson 1	228
Lesson 2	238
Lesson 3	246
Unit 7 Self-evaluation Quiz	254
UNIT 8 TRANSPORTATION	256
Lesson 1	258
Lesson 2	270
Lesson 3	280
Lesson 4	290
Unit 8 Self-evaluation Quiz	300
UNIT 9 HANGUL (Optional)	302
Lesson 1	304
Lesson 2	319
Lesson 3	329
KEYS TO THE EXERCISES	339
KOREAN-ENGLISH GLOSSARY	431
ENGLISH-KOREAN GLOSSARY	455
List of Images	Appendix

STUDENT GUIDE

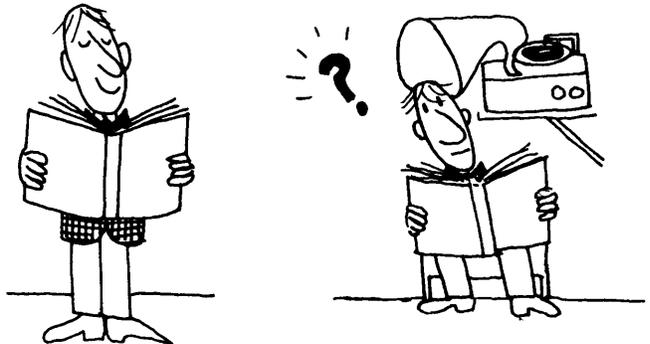
You are about to begin a course designed to enable you to communicate in situations which you are likely to encounter in Korea. The emphasis of the course is on speaking and understanding Korean, and you will be working extensively with tapes. Reading and writing Korean is optional; we encourage you to at least become familiar with the alphabet. With only a little practice you will be able to read people's names and names of streets or shops.



“Different strokes for”

Individual learning styles vary, and we have built a certain amount of flexibility into the materials to accommodate these variations. The recommendations that we make here have been successful for most students. If you have approaches that work better for you, by all means, use them.

1. We discourage you from trying to read the Korean without listening to the tape. If you attempt to read first and then listen to the tape, you will quickly discover that in many cases what you hear doesn't sound anything like what you see, and you will have wasted valuable time.



“What you see is not what you get!”

You will notice that when some words are pronounced by themselves, they will sound different from the way they sound in a sentence. Look at the English sentence "Did you eat yet?" which usually comes out sounding something like "Jeetjet?" Korean is not different, so pay careful attention to the way words combine with each other in sentences.



"k' ōp' i hanjan"

2. You should never repeat anything you don't understand. This does not mean that you must be able to translate everything word for word; it simply means that you should be able to attach a meaning to what you hear and repeat.

A good technique is to try to form pictures of what you are repeating. In certain kinds of exercises you will find yourself becoming very adept at making the correct

responses without being aware of what you're saying. Guard against this! Always think about what you're saying. When you begin to think in Korean, you'll find it much easier to monitor what you are saying. It won't matter if there is no word-for-word correspondence between the Korean and English, because you won't be thinking in English and translating words--you'll be translating thoughts.



Adūlhago ttal.

3. You may need to refer to your book the first time you do some exercises, but don't be satisfied with your performance until you can do the tape without referring to the book.

If you cannot keep up with the tape, take it a bit slower; stop the tape and give yourself time to formulate your response; repeat the exercise a couple of times. If you still can't keep up, go on to the next exercise or take a break and then try again.



Slow-w-w-w...down.



4. At first it will seem as if you are never going to be able to make some of the sounds you hear. Remember, you are overcoming 20, 30, 40, or more years of speech habit and your muscles will need some retraining. It's almost as though you suddenly had to start writing with your other hand; it can be done, but it will take some practice. Remember to enunciate clearly, to articulate distinctly, and to project your voice as if you were the anchorman broadcasting the six o'clock news.

5. You will sometimes find grammar notes and literal translations in the Notes on the Conversation immediately following the Conversation, and sometimes, as appropriate, with the Exercises. The grammar notes are important only if they fit your particular learning style and make it easier for you to learn the material. Memorizing grammar rules is not an objective of this course.



6. Lastly, and most importantly, practice speaking Korean at every opportunity; talk to your instructor, to your classmates, to yourself. Use what you have learned. Don't be afraid to experiment with the words and structures you learn.

Play with the language! Make new sentences--even if you have to use an English word. Express your thoughts--that's what language is all about.



Speak!

DESCRIPTION OF THE COURSE

The Korean Headstart program consists of Cultural Notes plus eight basic and one optional unit with accompanying tapes. Each unit is divided into lessons (three to four per unit). The learning activities for most units are:

1. Conversation
2. Notes on the Conversation
3. Exercises
4. Self-evaluation Quiz

Objectives are stated at the beginning of each unit; at the end of each unit is a self-evaluation quiz. Keys to marked exercises and self-evaluation quizzes are at the end of the book, followed by the Cumulative Glossary (Korean-English and English-Korean).

Units 1 through 8 should be studied in sequence. Average completion time for students who have never studied Korean is 80 to 160 hours. Unit 9, the optional Hangul unit, is meant to be studied with an instructor. There are no tapes accompanying this unit. The contents of each unit are shown below.

- Unit 1. Greetings and Introductions
- Unit 2. Numbers and Money
- Unit 3. Shopping
- Unit 4. Time and Dates
- Unit 5. Everyday Conversation
- Unit 6. Directions
- Unit 7. Restaurants and Food
- Unit 8. Transportation
- Unit 9. Hangul (Optional)

The Cultural Notes are extremely important for those who have never been exposed to Korean culture. A successful Korean tour may largely depend on your proper cultural knowledge. We often observe that the most simple misunderstandings between the natives and guests in a country come from lack of cultural understanding. The Cultural Notes will be both useful and interesting.

HOW TO STUDY THE COURSE

Select the proper tape by referring to the cassette index at the end of this Student Guide. You should begin with the Introduction to Korean Sounds tape. Listen to it a couple of times while following your text. When you have familiarized yourself with the Korean sounds and the way they are written, you are ready to begin Unit 1.

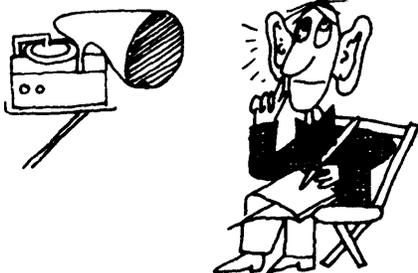


Get on your mark, get set

Before you start the tape for each unit, read the Objectives, the English version of the Conversation, and the Notes on the Conversation. In addition to grammar, the notes contain cultural or general information related to the subject or to the setting of the conversation. After practicing the conversation, you might wish to check the grammar notes again.

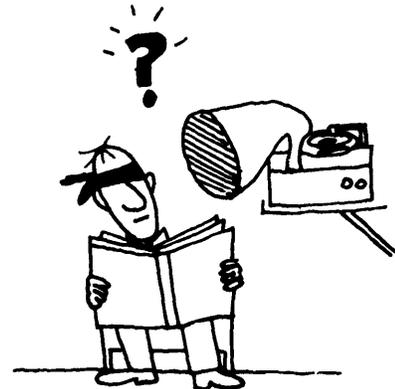
(KOREAN) You will notice that words required in Korean, but not in English will appear in parentheses; words that are not used in Korean but are needed in English are in brackets when first introduced.

[ENGLISH]



All the instructions are on the tape; you cannot work without it. When you are listening and repeating in Korean, try to imitate the speaker on the tape as closely as possible. If it helps you to look at the Korean, by all means do so, but remember to trust your ears rather than your eyes. In exercises where you are required to respond in Korean, the correct responses will given on the tape. Responses to exercises marked with a  are also printed in the Keys at the end of the book.

At the end of most lessons is a Conversation for Listening Comprehension. Its purpose is to familiarize you with less formal endings that may be used in Korean sentences. You will not be required to use these endings; however, you should be able to recognize and understand them well enough to respond when you hear them.



Each lesson contains "Say in Korean" exercises. These exercises are a review for the SEQ. If you have no trouble with these exercises, you are ready for the SEQ.

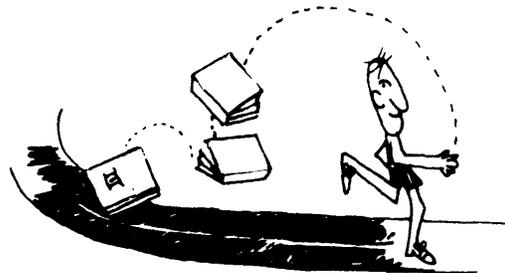


The SEQ "tests" your achievement of the unit objectives. It consists of a series of situations in which you must respond appropriately, either in Korean or in English. The quizzes are on the tape as are the correct responses to items that require you to speak. The correct answers for the entire quiz are printed in the Keys. If you can respond correctly to all the items in the quiz in the time allowed on the tape, you can be confident that you have achieved the objectives of the unit.



If you are working on your own and are satisfied with your performance on the SEQ for a unit, you are ready for the next unit. If you are working with an instructor, he or she will check your performance on the entire unit before you continue. This check will consist of an informal interview during which you will be asked to respond to your instructor playing a role appropriate to the subject of the unit.

When you have completed the first eight units, you are ready for the End-of-Course Test. This test consists of 50 items in a multiple-choice format; if you have performed satisfactorily on the SEQs and interviews, you will probably find it fairly easy. Eighty percent (40 correct answers) is the passing score.



WE HOPE YOU WILL ENJOY YOUR STUDY!

KOREAN HEADSTART
TAPE INDEX

<u>Tape</u>	<u>Side</u>			
1	1	Introduction to Korean Sounds		
		Unit 1	Lesson 1	Conversation - Ex. 11
			Lesson 2	Conversation
	2		Lesson 3	Pronunciation Drill - Ex. 13 Conversation - Ex. 3
2	1		Lesson 4	Ex. 4 - Ex. 18 Conversation - Ex. 9
	2	Unit 2	Lesson 1	Ex. 10 - SEQ Ex. 1 - Ex. 10
3	1		Lesson 2	Ex. 11 - Ex. 22 Conversation - Ex. 10
	2		Lesson 3	Ex. 11 - Ex. 20 Ex. 1 - Ex. 8
4	1	Unit 3	Lesson 1	Conversation - Ex. 20 Conversation - Pronunciation Drill
	2		Lesson 2	Ex. 1 - Ex. 14 Conversation - Ex. 3
5	1		Lesson 3	Ex. 4 - Ex. 15 Conversation - Ex. 6
	2	Unit 4	Lesson 1	Ex. 7 - SEQ Ex. 1 - Ex. 10
6	1		Lesson 2	Ex. 11 - Ex. 20 Ex. 1 - Ex. 10
	2		Lesson 3	Ex. 11 - Ex. 18 Ex. 1 - Ex. 10

7	1	Unit 5	Lesson 1	Ex. 11 - Ex. 12 Conversation - Ex. 7
	2		Lesson 2	Ex. 8 - Ex. 18 Conversation - Pronunciation Drill
8	1		Lesson 3	Pronunciation Drill - Ex.18 Conversation
	2			Pronunciation Drill - Ex.18
9	1	Unit 6	Lesson 1	SEQ Conversation - Ex. 15
	2		Lesson 2	Conversation - Ex. 15
10	1		Lesson 3	Conversation - SEQ
	2	Unit 7	Lesson 1	Conversation - Ex. 14
			Lesson 2	Conversation - Pronunciation Drill
11	1		Lesson 3	Ex. 1 - Ex. 13 Conversation - Ex. 9
	2		Unit 8	Lesson 1
12	1		Lesson 2	Ex. 12 - Ex. 15 Conversation - Ex. 14
	2		Lesson 3	Ex. 15 - Ex. 16 Conversation - Ex. 16
13	1		Lesson 4	Ex. 17 - Ex. 18 Conversation - Ex. 15
	2			SEQ

INTRODUCTION TO KOREAN GRAMMAR

During this course, we will use as few grammatical terms as possible. However, there are several essential points you should know about the language.

1. In a Korean sentence the verb always comes at the end.
2. A Korean sentence can drop the subject whenever the context makes it clear. However, a subject is used if there is a chance of ambiguity.
3. The type of sentence (whether it is a statement, question or request) is indicated by a "sentence ending," an element added to the end of the verb.

For example, if you see -mnida at the end of a sentence, it is a statement. -mnikka means it is a question, and -shipshio always denotes a request.

4. For each ending, there are two styles, formal and informal. We will primarily use the formal ones. The informal ones will be used in a conversation at the end of most lessons for your recognition only. You will not be required to use the informal endings nor will you be tested on them. They are presented for familiarization only because many Koreans will mix both styles in the same conversation.

INTRODUCTION TO KOREAN SOUNDS

In this course, we will romanize the Korean sounds. Many romanized symbols represent Korean sounds similar to those of English. However, there are several which are unique to Korean.

VOWELS

<u>a</u>	AS IN	f <u>a</u> ther	aju	-	very
<u>e</u>	AS IN	b <u>e</u> d	set	-	three
<u>i</u>	AS IN	s <u>ee</u>	iri	-	this way
<u>o</u>	AS IN	b <u>o</u> rn	oshipshio	-	please come
<u>u</u>	AS IN	r <u>u</u> de	kudu	-	shoe
<u>ae</u>	AS IN	c <u>a</u> t	taewi	-	captain
<u>o</u>	AS IN	m <u>o</u> ther	odi	-	where
<u>u</u>	AS IN	p <u>u</u> t	kurigo	-	and
<u>y</u>	AS IN	y <u>e</u> t	yosae	-	lately
<u>w</u>	AS IN	w <u>e</u> t	wae	-	why

CONSONANTS

<u>g</u>	AS IN	<u>g</u> o	yogi	-	here
<u>k</u>	AS IN	b <u>o</u> ok	kudu	-	shoe
<u>k'</u>	AS IN	<u>k</u> ick	chok'a	-	nephew
<u>kk</u>	AS IN	s <u>k</u> y	-kkaji	-	up to
<u>b</u>	AS IN	b <u>o</u> y	obun	-	five minutes
<u>p</u>	AS IN	t <u>o</u> p	paek	-	hundred
<u>p'</u>	AS IN	p <u>o</u> ol	p'al	-	eight

KOREAN SOUNDS

<u>pp</u>	AS IN	<u>speak</u>	Pappūmnida.	-	I'm busy.
<u>d</u>	AS IN	<u>day</u>	ōdi	-	where
<u>t</u>	AS IN	<u>bit</u>	taewi	-	captain
<u>t'</u>	AS IN	<u>take</u>	T'ashipshio.	-	Please get on.
<u>tt</u>	AS IN	<u>stay</u>	ttara	-	following
<u>j</u>	AS IN	<u>measure</u>	ōnje	-	when
<u>ch</u>	AS IN	<u>change</u>	chumal	-	weekend
<u>ch'</u>	AS IN	<u>chew</u>	ch'a	-	tea
<u>tch</u>	AS IN	<u>pitcher</u>	Tchamnida.	-	It's salty.
<u>s</u>	AS IN	<u>say</u>	saram	-	person
<u>ss</u>	AS IN	<u>song</u>	Ssamnida.	-	It's inexpensive.
<u>sh</u>	AS IN	<u>she</u>	Oshipshio.	-	Please come.
<u>h</u>	AS IN	<u>hand</u>	hana	-	one
<u>m</u>	AS IN	<u>many</u>	man	-	10,000
<u>n</u>	AS IN	<u>can</u>	nugu	-	who
<u>ng</u>	AS IN	<u>sing</u>	soryōng	-	major
<u>l</u>	AS IN	<u>look</u>	p'al	-	eight
<u>r</u>	AS IN	<u>through</u>	saram	-	person

NOTE: Korean words sometimes change your pronunciation, depending on the other words they are combined with. These sound changes are indicated in the romanization to help you with your pronunciation.

UNIT 1

GREETINGS AND INTRODUCTIONS



Lee Myung Bak, mayor of Seoul, shaking hands

Photo: Erik Möller
Date: 24 June 2005
Public Domain

UNIT 1

OBJECTIVES

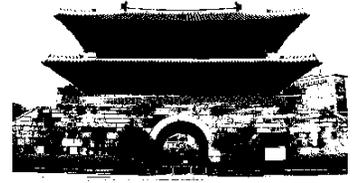


Photo: Gaël Chardon
cc-by-sa-2.0

At the end of Unit 1, you will be able to:

1. Address someone politely.
2. Greet an acquaintance and respond to a greeting.
3. Address officers.
4. Ask how another person has been and tell how you've been.
5. Address enlisted persons.
6. Introduce yourself and someone else.
7. Ask if someone is married and answer the same question.
8. Ask if someone is military and answer the same question.
9. Ask if someone is an officer or an NCO, ask his branch of service, and answer the same questions.
10. Say good-bye.



U.S. Army Garrison Daegu Commander at Camp George's Child Development Center

Photo: Jin-young Jang
Date: 10 Jun 2008

Photo Courtesy U.S. Army
U.S. Public Domain

UNIT 1, LESSON 1



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

CONVERSATION

- Jim Harris: Kim sonsaengnim,
annyonghashimnikka? Hello, Mr. Kim.
- Mr. Kim: Ne. Harris taewinim,
annyonghashimnikka?
Oraeganmanimnida. Hello, Captain Harris.
It's been a long time.
- Jim Harris: Ne. Oraeganmanimnida.
Ottok'e chinaeshimnikka? Yes, it's been a long
time. How are you getting
along?
- Mr. Kim: Chal chinaemnida. Yosae
pappūshimnikka? I'm getting along fine.
Are you busy these days?
- Jim Harris: Pyōllo an pappūmnida. I'm not really busy.



Namdaemun gate in Seoul

Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
Date: 24 Feb 2007
cc-by-sa-2.0

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Sōnsaengnim is a polite title used when speaking to an adult male. When used with a person's family name (last name), it follows immediately after the family name.

Annyōng means "well-being" or "peace."

-mnikka is the question ending. Annyōnghashimnikka? is used as "Hello," "Good morning," "Good afternoon" or "Good evening." It literally means "Are you at peace?" so it is answered with Ne.

Ne is the most common way to say "yes." However, ye is sometimes used for "yes" as well.

When Koreans meet, they either bow or nod their heads as they greet each other. Generally, the person who is younger or junior in rank or position speaks first.

Taewi is the rank which corresponds to the American O-3 and -nim is the polite suffix added to it. The Korean Armed Forces use one title for each grade, regardless of service. For the sake of simplicity, Army ranks are used in English translations. There is a chart at the end of this lesson showing insignia and ranks for Republic of Korea forces.

Orae means "for a long time" and -mnida is the statement ending.

Öttök'e means "how" and chinae means "to get along." In the question Öttök'e chinaeshimnikka? -shi makes the question honorific. By "honorific" we simply mean a way to show respect towards another.

Chal means "well," "fine" or "satisfactorily."

Notice that chinaemnida does not have the honorific -shi because the person talking is stating a fact about himself, not about another person. Therefore, the speaker would be immodest to use the honorific for himself.

Yosae means "these days," "recently," "lately" or "nowadays."

Note again that pappūshimnikka, "are you busy," includes -shi because Mr. Kim is asking about someone else. But pappūmnida does not have -shi because Jim Harris is speaking about himself.

Pyōllo is only used in negative sentences to add the meaning of "not really" or "not particularly."



Drum at Bulguksa in Gyeongju, Gyeongsangbuk-do, South Korea

Photo: nzj©
Date: 2 Oct 2007
cc-by-3.0

EXERCISES

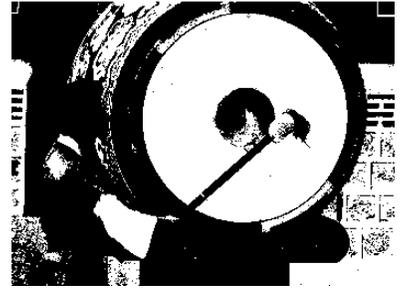


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Annyōnghashimnikka?

Hello.

Kim sōnsaengnim, annyōnghashimnikka?

Hello, Mr. Kim.

Harris taewinim, annyōnghashimnikka?

Hello, Captain Harris.

Kim sōnsaengnim, oraeganmanimnida.

It's been a long time, Mr. Kim.

Harris taewinim, ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?

How are you getting along, Captain Harris?

Chal chinaemnida.

I'm getting along fine.

Kim sōnsaengnim, yosae pappūshimnikka?

Are you busy these days, Mr. Kim?

Pyōllo an pappūmnida.

I'm not really busy.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



Hello, CPT Harris.

Are you busy these days, Mr. Kim?

I'm not really busy.

How are you getting along, Mr. Kim?

I'm getting along fine.

It's been a long time, CPT Harris.

Exercise 4. Repetition.

chunwi	warrant officer (WO1 to CW4)
Kim chunwinim	WO Kim
sowi	second lieutenant (O-1)
Kim sowinim	2LT Kim
chungwi	first lieutenant (O-2)
Clark chungwinim	1LT Clark
soryōng	major (O-4)
Taylor soryōngnim	MAJ Taylor
chungryōng	lieutenant colonel (O-5)
Yi chungryōngnim	LTC Yi
taeryōng	colonel (O-6)
Harris taeryōngnim	COL Harris

NOTE: The Korean Armed Forces use one title for each rank, regardless of service. Notice that the rank follows immediately after the last name. -nim is added to show respect, particularly to those senior in rank.

Exercise 5. Say in English.



Exercise 6. Say in Korean.



MAJ Smith

CPT Clark

WO Yi

1LT Yi

2LT Pak

Exercise 7.

You hear: Kim sōnsaengnim

Say: Kim sōnsaengnim, annyōnghashimnikka?

Exercise 8.

You hear: Mr. Yi

Say: Kim sōnsaengnim, oraeganmanimnida.

Mr. Pak

CPT Yi

COL Clark

WO Harris

Exercise 9.

You hear: CPT Kim

Say: Kim taewinim, $\bar{o}t\bar{t}\bar{o}k'e$ chih̄aeshimnikka?

MAJ Pak

LTC Harris

2LT Kim

1LT Yi

CPT Clark

Exercise 10.

You hear: 2LT Pak

Say: Pak sowinim, yosae pappūshimnikka?

2LT Smith

1LT Taylor

MAJ Pak

COL Yi

Mr. Harris

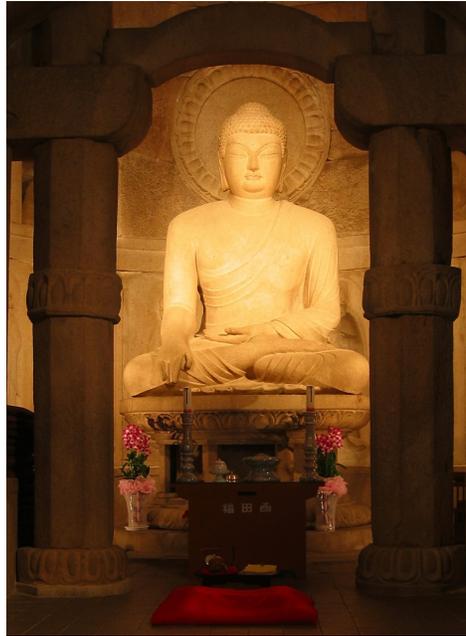
Exercise 11. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Photo: Richardfabi
11 Aug 2003
cc-by-sa-3.0

Buddha at Seokguram

Jim Harris: Kim s̄onsaengnim, annyōnghaseyo?

Mr. Kim: Ne. Harris taewinim, annyōnghaseyo? Oraeganmanimnida.

Jim Harris: Ne. Oraeganmanimnida. Ōttōk'e chinaeseyo?

Mr. Kim: Chal chinaemnida. Yosae pappūseyo?

Jim Harris: Pyōllo an pappayo.

RANK INSIGNIA

OFFICERS AND WARRANT OFFICERS



FLEET ADMIRAL



VICE ADMIRAL



ADMIRAL



REAR ADMIRAL



COMMODORE



CAPTAIN



COMMANDER



LIEUTENANT
COMMANDER



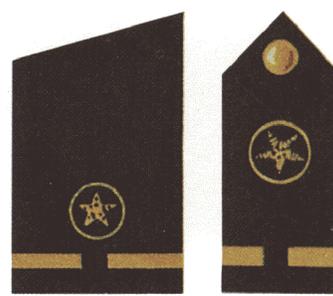
LIEUTENANT



LIEUTENANT
JUNIOR GRADE



ENSIGN



WARRANT OFFICER

RANK INSIGNIA

GROUND, MARINE AND AIR FORCES OFFICERS AND WARRANT OFFICERS

NOTE: SHOULDERBOARD COLOR DENOTES BRANCH OF SERVICE; GREEN, ARMY; BLUE, AIR FORCE; KHAKI, MARINE.



GENERAL OF THE ARMY



GENERAL



LIEUTENANT GENERAL



MAJOR GENERAL



BRIGADIER GENERAL



COLONEL



LIEUTENANT COLONEL



MAJOR



CAPTAIN



1ST LIEUTENANT



2D LIEUTENANT



WARRANT OFFICER

ENLISTED ALL FORCES

NOTE: PATCH AND STRIPE COLOR DENOTE BRANCH OF SERVICE; GREEN AND RED, ARMY; KHAKI AND BLACK, MARINE; BLUE AND WHITE, AIR FORCE; BLACK AND RED, NAVY.



SERGEANT MAJOR



SENIOR CHIEF PETTY OFFICER



MASTER SERGEANT



STAFF SERGEANT



SERGEANT



PETTY OFFICER 3D CLASS



AIRMAN 1ST CLASS



PRIVATE

UNIT 1, LESSON 2

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- David Jones: Kim sōnsaengnim,
annyōnghashimnikka? Hello, Mr. Kim.
- Mr. Kim: Ne. Jones sangbyōng-
nim, oraeganmanimnida. It's been a long time,
ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka? SP4 Jones. How are you
getting along?
- David Jones: Chal chinaemnida.
Yosae pappūshimnikka? I'm getting along fine.
Are you busy these days?
- Mr. Kim: Kūjō kūrōssūmnida. So-so.
- David Jones: Che ch'ingu
sogae hamnida. Let me introduce my
Ibuni Williams friend. This is SGT
pyōngjangimnida. Williams.
- Mr. Kim: Ne. Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida.
Kim Sang-Jinimnida. Pleased to meet you.
I'm Kim Sang-Jin.
- Mike Williams: Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida.
Williams pyōngjang- Pleased to meet you.
imnida. I'm SGT Williams.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Sangbyōng is equivalent to E-4. Enlisted and NCO ranks are the same in all services of the Korean Armed Forces.

Kūjō means "just," "merely."

Kūrōssūmnida means "That's so." Koreans customarily respond to casual greetings like "How are you getting along?" or "Are you busy?" by saying, Kūjō kūrōssūmnida to show modesty. They rarely respond with "I am fine," "I'm very busy" or other positive expressions.

Che means "my" and ch'ingu, "friend."

Sogae means "introduction" so sogaehamnida literally means "I am making an introduction."

Ibuni means "this person;" it may be used for either sex. The final -i indicates ibun is the subject. This -i may be omitted so you may also use ibun.

Ch'ōm means "the first time."

Pwepsūmnida literally means "[I] am seeing you." The whole expression Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida is a polite expression equivalent to "Pleased to meet you" or "How do you do?"

Kim Sang-Jin is a full Korean name: Kim is the family name and Sang-Jin is the first name. In Korean, the last name comes first.

-imnida means "I am," "you are," "he/she/it is," or "they are."

Pyōngjang refers to an E-5 in any service.

Notice that Williams pyōngjangimnida does not have -nim because he is describing himself.

When you are being introduced to someone, you should nod or bow in greeting. However, it is up to the senior person to decide whether or not to shake hands.

EXERCISES

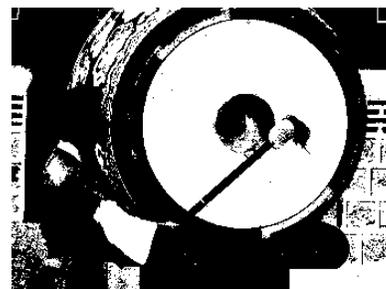


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Williams pyōngjangnim, oraeganmanimnida.

It's been a long time, SGT Williams.

Yu sōnsaengnim, yosae pappūshimnikka?

Are you busy these days, Mr. Yu?

Kūjō kūrōssūmnida.

So-so.

Parker chungwinim sogae hamnida.

Let me introduce LLT Parker.

Ibuni Smith ilbyōngimnida.

This is PFC Smith.

Ne. Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida.

Pleased to meet you.

Mike Williamsimnida.

I am Mike Williams.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.

I'm Kim Sang-Jin.

Pleased to meet you.

Let me introduce my friend.

Are you busy these days?

So-so.

This is SGT Smith.

Exercise 4. Repetition.

sōnsaeng	mr.
Pak sōnsaeng	Mr. Pak
misūt'ō	mr.
misūt'ō Kim	Mr. Kim
misū	miss
misū Pak	Miss Pak
ibyōng	private (E-2)
Yi ibyōng	PV2 Yi
ilbyōng	private first class (E-3)
Pak ilbyōng	PFC Pak
sangbyōng	specialist fourth class (E-4)
Ch'we sangbyōng	SP4 Ch'we

NOTE: Without -nim, sōnsaeng refers to a familiar adult male equal in age or status. Misūt'ō comes from English and refers to someone younger or lower in status. Both expressions are less polite than sōnsaengnim. In this course, use sōnsaengnim unless you are told otherwise. Remember it's always better to be a little too polite than to risk being rude.

Korean women keep their maiden names after marriage, so there is no word "mrs." You will learn how to address married women later.

Exercise 5. Say in English.



Exercise 6. Say in Korean.



PFC Pak

Miss Yi

SP4 Jones

PV2 Ch'we

SGT Chang

Exercise 7.

You hear: SP4 Cho

Say: Cho sangbyōngnim, che ch'ingu sogae hamnida.

Mr. Pak

PFC Ch'we

PV2 Chang

SGT Yi

SP4 Yu

Exercise 8.

You hear: SGT Williams

Say: Ibuni Williams pyōngjangimnida.

Mr. Kim

Mr. Pak

SP4 Chang

PFC Yi

PV2 Ch'we

Exercise 9.

You hear: Pappūshimnikka?

Say: Pappūmnida.

Exercise 10.

You hear: Mr. Kim

Say: Kim sōnsaengnim, ch'ōm pwepsūmnida.

Miss Kim

PFC Pak

SGT Cho

PV2 Ch'we

Mr. Yi

Exercise 11.

You hear: PFC Pak

Say: Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida. Pak ilbyōngimnida.

PFC Ch'we

SGT Chang

PV2 Yi

Miss Kim

SP4 Jones

Exercise 12. Role Play.



- a. Say hello to Mr. Kim.
- b. Say that it's been a long time.
- c. Ask how he is getting along.
- d. Say that you are getting along fine. Then introduce your friend SGT Williams.

Exercise 13. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Korean traditional porcelain shop in Insadong, Seoul

Photo: pravin.premkumar
Date: 1 Dec 2001
cc-by-2.0

- David Jones: Kim sōnsaengnim, annyōnghaseyo?
- Mr. Kim: Ne. Jones sangbyōngnim, oraeganmanyeyo. Ōttōk'e chinaeseyo?
- David Jones: Chal chinaemnida. Yosae pappūseyo?
- Mr. Kim: Kūjō kūraeyo.
- David Jones: Che ch'ingu sogae hamnida. Ibuni Williams pyōngjangimnida.
- Mr. Kim: Ne. Ch'ōm pwepkessōyo. Kim Sang-Jinyeyo.
- Mike Williams: Ch'ōm pwepkessōyo. Williams pyōngjangimnida.

UNIT 1, LESSON 3

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- Mr. Kim: Williams pyōngjangnim,
yukkunishimnikka? SGT Williams, are you in
the Army?
- Mike Williams: Ne. Yukkunimnida. Yes. I am in the Army.
- Mr. Kim: Shillejiman, kyōlhon
hashyōssūmnikka? Excuse me, but are you
married?
- Mike Williams: Ajik mihonimnida. I'm still single.
- Mr. Kim: A, kūrōssūmnikka? Oh, is that so?
- Mike Williams: Ne. Kim sōnsaengnim,
kuninishimnikka? Yes. Mr. Kim, are you in
the military?
- Mr. Kim: Aniyo. Chōnūn
minganinimnida. No. I'm a civilian.
- Mike Williams: Ne. Algessūmnida.
Kūrōm, kyōlhon ha-
shyōssūmnikka? I see. Well, are you
married?
- Mr. Kim: Mullonimnida. Of course.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Yukkun means both "army" and "soldier." It refers strictly to ground forces, not to the military or military personnel in general.

-ishimnikka is the honorific way of asking "are you," "is he/she" or "are they." The context will determine which person is being asked about.

Shillejiman means "Excuse me, but..." Shille means "impoliteness" and -jiman means "but." -jiman is never used by itself.

Kyōlhon means "marriage" and hashyōssūmnikka means "have you done." Therefore, the whole expression means, "Have you gotten married?" or "Are you married?"

Ajik means "yet" or "still."

Mihon means "non-marriage;" with -imnida, it means "I am not married," or "I am single."

A is a casual exclamation like "Oh!"

Kūrōssūmnikka? means "Is that so?" or "Really?"

Kunin refers to anyone serving in the military, regardless of service.

Aniyo means "no."

Chō is the polite way to say "I," and -nūn indicates that chō is the subject. In Korean, "I" can usually be omitted.

Minganin means "civilian."

Algessūmnida means "I see" or "I understand."

Kūrōm means "well" or "well, then."

Mullon means "of course" or "needless to say." When this word is used by itself to agree, it is followed by -imnida to mean "It is needless to say."

EXERCISES

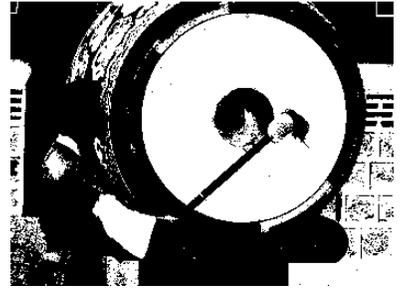


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Yukkunishimnikka?

Are you in the Army?

Kūrōm, minganinishimnikka?

Well then, are you a civilian?

Shillejiman, kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?

Excuse me, but are you married?

Aniyo. Ajik mihonimnida.

No. I'm still single.

Aniyo. Chōnūn kuninimnida.

No. I'm in the military.

Ne. Algessūmnida.

I see.

Pak sōnsaengnim, kuninishimnikka?

Mr. Pak, are you in the military?

Ne. Mullonimnida.

Yes. I sure am.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean. 

Excuse me, but are you in the Army?

I am still single.

Yes, I am a civilian.

Oh, is that so?

Are you in the military?

Exercise 4. Repetition.

haegun

Navy

Haegunishimnikka?

Are you in the Navy?

konggun

Air Force

Konggunishimnikka?

Are you in the Air Force?

haebyōngdae

Marine Corps

Haebyoŋgishimnikka?

Are you in the Marines?

hasagwan

NCO or petty officer (Navy)

changgyo

officer

haegun changgyo

Navy officer

haegun hasagwan

Navy petty officer

konggun hasagwan

Air Force NCO

haebyoŋg changgyo

Marine Corps officer

yukkun hasagwan

Army NCO

Exercise 5. Say in English. 

Exercise 6. Say in Korean.

I am an Army NCO.

I am in the Marine Corps.

Are you in the Air Force?

Are you an officer?

I am a Navy officer.

Exercise 7.

You hear: Yukkunishimnikka?

Say: Ne. Yukkunimnida.

Exercise 8. Repetition.

hasa	staff sergeant (E-6)
Yu hasanim	SSG Yu
chungsa	sergeant first class (E-7)
Pak chungsanim	SFC Pak
sangsa	master sergeant (E-8)
Cho sangsanim	MSG Cho
chuimsangsa	sergeant major (E-9)

NOTE: Chuimsangsa is more a title than a rank. Therefore, it is normally used without a name, just as one might use "First Sergeant" or "Sergeant Major" without a name.

Exercise 9. Say in English.



Exercise 10. Say in Korean.



Are you an Air Force officer?

No. I am a Navy officer.

Are you a sergeant first class?

No. I am a master sergeant.

I am a Marine Corps staff sergeant.

Exercise 11.

You hear: Kim hasa, Army

Say: Kim hasanim, yukkunishimnikka?

Kim chungsa, Navy

Pak hasa, Marine Corps

Cho sangsa, Air Force

Yi pyōngjang, Marine Corps

chuimsangsa, Army

Exercise 12.

You hear: Mr. Pak

Say: Pak sōnsaengnim, shillejiman, kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?

SSG Cho

Mr. Pak

SFC Yi

Miss Ch'we

Exercise 13.

You hear: Mr. Kim

Say: Kim sōnsaengnim, chōnūn ajik mihonimnida.

Miss Yi

Mr. Chang

MSG Pak

Sergeant Major

Exercise 14.

You hear: Kuninishimnikka?

Say: Ne. Kuninimnida.

Exercise 15.

You hear: CPT Pak

Say: Pak taewinim, chōnūn minganinimnida.

SFC Yi

SSG Chang

CPT Pak

2LT Kim

Mr. Ch'we

Exercise 16.

You hear: Miss Kim, Air Force officer

Say: Misū Kim, chōnūn konggun changgyoimnida.

Miss Pak, Army NCO

Mr. Ch'we, Navy officer

Miss Yi, in the Marine Corps

Mr. Chang, in the Air Force

Exercise 17. Role Play.

- a. Say that you are glad to meet him. Then state your name and rank.
- b. Say that you are in the Air Force. Ask Mr. Kim if he is military.
- c. Say that you are still single. Now ask Mr. Kim if he is married.

Exercise 18. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Entrance to Girimsa Temple, Gyeongju

Photo: nzj©
Date: 3 Oct 2007
cc-by-3.0

Mr. Kim: Williams pyōngjangnim, yukkuniseyo?

Mike Williams: Ne. Yukkunyeyo.

Mr. Kim: Shillejiman, kyōlhon hashyōssōyo?

Mike Williams: Ajik mihonyeyo.

Mr. Kim: A, kūrōseyo?

Mike Williams: Ne. Kim sōnsaengnim, kuniniseyo?

Mr. Kim: Aniyo. Chōnūn minganinyeyo.

Mike Williams: Ne. Algessūmnida. Kūrōm, kyōlhon hashyōssōyo?

Mr. Kim: Mullonimnida.



Buddhist temple, Gyeongju

Photo: Steve Slep
Date: 25 Sep 2007
cc-by-2.0

UNIT 1, LESSON 4

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

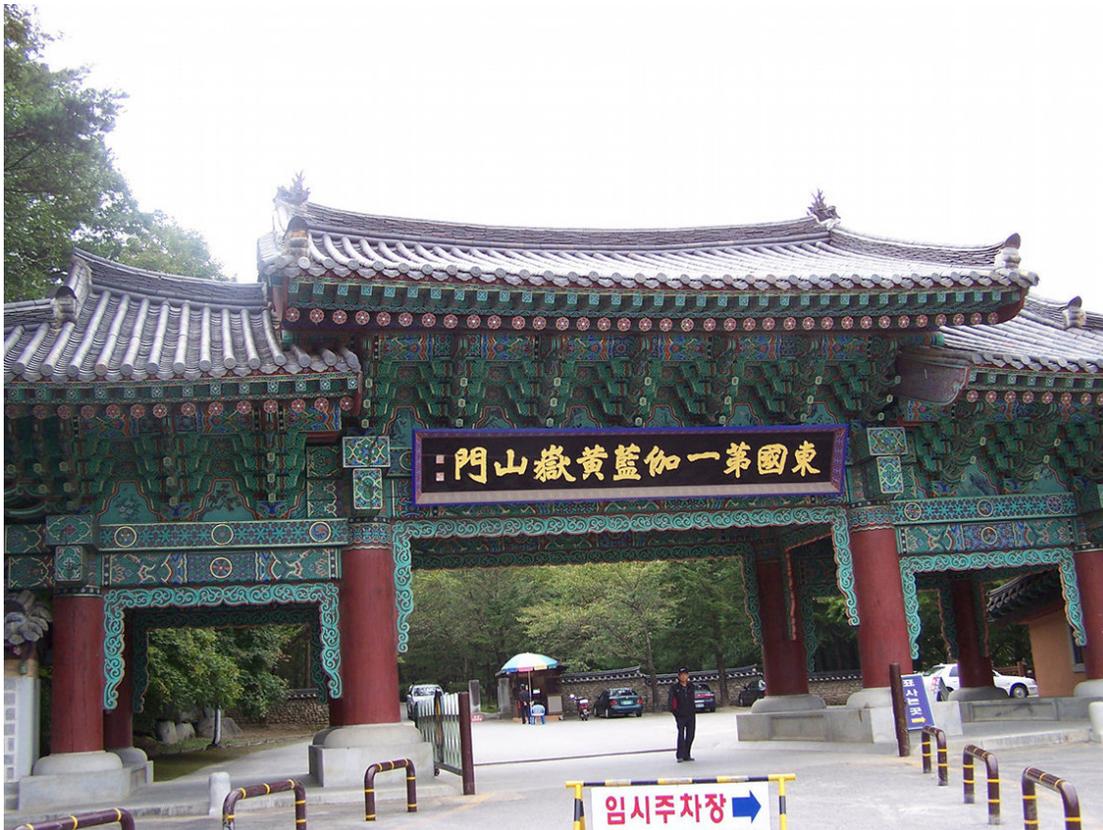
David Jones: Kūrōm, kagessūmnida. Well, I am going to go.

Mr. Kim: Waeyo? Pappūshimnikka? Why? Are you busy?

David Jones: Ne. Chom pappūmnida. Yes, I'm a little busy.

Mr. Kim: Algessūmnida. Kūrōm, I understand. Well, good-
annyōngghi kashipshio. bye, I'll see you again.
Tto pwepkessūmnida.

David Jones Ne. Tto pwepkessūmnida. Yes, I'll see you again.
Annyōngghi kyeshipshio. Good-bye.



Entrance to Jikji Temple in South Korea

Photo: Crossmr
Date: 28 Sep 2009
cc-by-sa-3.0

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Kagessūmnida is ka-, "to go," -gess-, "will," and -ūmnida (the statement ending), meaning "I will go."

Waeyo? means "Why?" with "so soon" understood.

Chom means "a little."

Annyōngghi means "in peace." Kashipshio is ka-, "to go," and -shipshio, the request ending. The whole expression literally means "Please go in peace." This is the farewell to the one who is leaving.

Tto means "again," "once more," "in addition."

Tto pwepkessūmnida is "[I] will see [you] again."

Annyōngghi kyeshipshio, "Please stay in peace," is the farewell to the person staying. Of course, when both parties are leaving, they will say, Annyōngghi kashipshio to each other.



Gate Guardian Deva Kings in Sokcho, Gangwon Province

Photo: Steve46814 at en.wikipedia
Date: 10 Oct 2007
cc-by-sa-3.0

EXERCISES

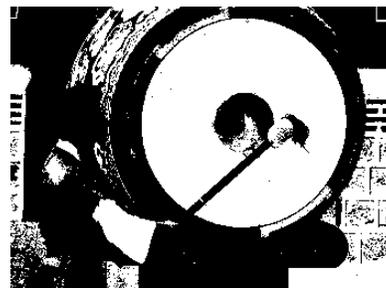


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Kūrōm, kagessūmnida.

Well, I am going to go.

Waeyo? Pappūshimnikka?

Why? Are you busy?

Ne. Chom pappūmnida.

Yes. I'm a little busy.

Kūrōm, annyōngghi kashipshio.

Well, good-bye. (Please go in peace.)

Tto pwepkessūmnida.

I'll see you again.

Annyōngghi kyeshipshio.

Good-bye. (Please stay in peace.)

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



Good-bye. (Please stay in peace.)

Well, good-bye. (Please go in peace.)

I am going to go.

Well then, I'll see you again.

I'm a little busy.

Why?

Exercise 4. Repetition.

naeil

Naeil tto pwepkessūmnida.

Naeil pappūshimnikka?

Naeil chom pappūmnida.

ittaga

Ittaga kashipshio.

Ittaga pappūshimnikka?

Ittaga kagessūmnida.

taūm chue

Taūm chue chom pappūmnida.

Taūm chue kashipshio.

Taūm chue tto pwepkessūmnida.

taūm tare

Taūm tare pappūshimnikka?

Taūm tare kagessūmnida.

Taūm tare chom pappūmnida.

Taum tare kashipshio.

tomorrow

I'll see you again tomorrow.

Are you busy tomorrow?

I'm a little busy tomorrow.

later

Please go later.

Are you busy later?

I'll go later.

next week

I'm a little busy next week.

Please go next week.

I'll see you again next week.

next month

Are you busy next month?

I'll go next month.

I'm a little busy next month.

Please go next month.

Exercise 5. Say in English.



Exercise 6. Say in Korean.



Please go later.

Are you busy next month?

I am a little busy next week.

I'll go tomorrow.

I'll see you again tomorrow.

Exercise 7.

You hear: Mr. Kim

Say: Kim sōnsaengnim, kūrōm chōnūn kagessūmnida.

Mr. Pak

Miss Yi

MAJ Yu

CPT Kim

COL Cho

Exercise 8.



You hear: Pappūmnida.

Say: An pappūmnida.

Exercise 9.

You hear: Mr. Kim

Say: Kim sōnsaengnim, annyōngghi kyeshipshio.

Miss Kim

SGT Cho

SSG Yu

SFC Pak

2LT Yi

Exercise 10.

You hear: Pappūshimnikka?

Say: Pappūmnida.

Exercise 11.

You hear: Mr. Pak

Say: Pak sōnsaengnim, annyōngghi kashipshio.

Mr. Kim

PV2 Pak

PFC Yi

SP4 Chang

MSG Ch'we

Exercise 12.

You hear: COL Pak, tomorrow

Say: Pak taeryōngnim, naeil tto pwepkessūmnida.

Mr. Ch'we, next week

Miss Chang, later

CPT Kim, next month

MAJ Pak, tomorrow

Exercise 13. Say in Korean. 

It's been a long time.

How are you getting along?

Let me introduce my friend.

Pleased to meet you.

Are you in the Army?

Are you married?

Are you in the military?

I am a civilian.

Exercise 14. Role Play. 

- a. Say that you're "so-so." Then ask Mr. Kim if he's busy.
- b. Say, "Well, I'm going to go."
- c. Say that you're a little busy.
- d. Say, "Good-bye."

Exercise 15. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Photo: Robert
Date: 22 Jul 2007
cc-by-3.0

Pagoda near Gwandeok-ri Andong City

David Jones: Kūrōm, kagessōyo.

Mr. Kim: Waeyo? Pappūseyo?

David Jones: Ne. Yosae chom pappayo.

Mr. Kim: A, kūrōseyo? Algessūmnida. Kūrōm tto pwepkessōyo.
Annyōngghi kashipshio.

David Jones: Annyōngghi kyeshipshio. Taūm chue tto pwepkessōyo.

UNIT 1

SELF-EVALUATION QUIZ

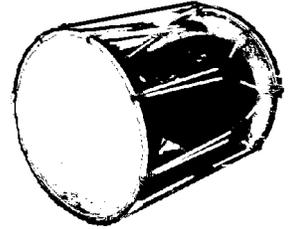


Photo: Visviva
Public Domain

Situation 1. You're SP4 David Jones, and you're in the snack bar after work. You see SFC Yi, who works next door to you.

- a. Greet him by name.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. Say that you're getting along fine.
- d. ON TAPE ONLY.

Situation 2. You want to find out a little more about SFC Yi.

- a. Ask if he is an Air Force NCO.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. Excuse yourself, and ask if he's married.

Situation 3. You're CPT Jim Harris. While you're talking to MAJ Pak in your office, your friend CPT Bill Brown comes in.

- a. Introduce CPT Brown to MAJ Pak.
- b. You're CPT Brown, and you've just been introduced to MAJ Pak. What do you say?

Situation 4. You want to get better acquainted with MAJ Pak.

- a. Ask if he is an Army officer.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. How would you respond?

Situation 5. You're a little busy, so you have to go back to your office now.

- a. Tell MAJ Pak that you're going.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. Tell him that you're a little busy.
- d. ON TAPE ONLY.
- e. How would you respond?

UNIT 2

NUMBERS AND MONEY



A participant in a traditional mask dance.
South Korean delegation at the 2009 Kamakura Matsuri, Japan

Photo: Urashimataro
Date: 13 Apr 2009
Public Domain

UNIT 2

OBJECTIVES

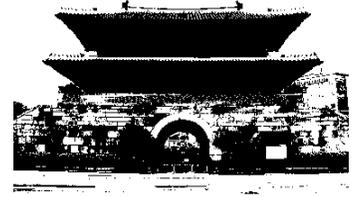


Photo: Gaël Chardon
cc-by-sa-2.0

The Korean language uses two different number systems. The first consists of native Korean numbers; the second, borrowed from China over a thousand years ago, is called Sino-Korean. Native Korean numbers are used when counting or referring to a small number of objects. Only Sino-Korean numbers are used with monetary units.

At the end of Unit 2, you will be able to:

1. Understand and use native Korean numbers 1-19.
2. Understand and use common counters with native Korean numbers.
3. Understand and use Sino-Korean numbers.
4. Understand and use money expressions.
5. Ask, "How much?" and "How many?"
6. Ask, "Do you have/are there?"
7. Say, "Please give me."
8. Ask and understand what the exchange rate is.

UNIT 2, LESSON 1

NATIVE KOREAN NUMBERS 1 - 10

hana	1
tul	2
set	3
net	4
tasōt	5
yōsōt	6
ilgop	7
yōdōl	8
ahop	9
yōl	10

Exercise 1. Repetition.

hana, tul, set, net, tasōt 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

yōsōt, ilgop, yōdōl, ahop, yōl 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

hana,	tul,	set,	net,	tasōt,	yōsōt,	ilgop,	yōdōl,	ahop,	yōl
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

Exercise 2. Say in Korean.



a. 1 e. 5 i. 9 m. 2 q. 8

b. 2 f. 6 j. 10 n. 4 r. 10

c. 3 g. 7 k. 3 o. 6 s. 7

d. 4 h. 8 l. 1 p. 5 t. 9

NATIVE KOREAN NUMBERS 11 - 19

The numbers 11 through 19 are combinations of "ten" and the numbers "one" through "nine."

yōlhana	11
yōltul	12
yōlset	13
yōlnet	14
yōltasōt	15
yōlyōsōt	16
yōlilgop	17
yōlyōdōl	18
yōlahop	19

Exercise 3. Say in Korean. 

a. 11	d. 14	g. 17	j. 12	m. 16
b. 12	e. 15	h. 18	k. 14	n. 15
c. 13	f. 16	i. 19	l. 11	o. 13

Exercise 4. Say in English. 

COUNTER WORDS

There are words in Korean called "counters" which are used with objects. They are not always required, but often used with numbers, just as English uses "cup," "glass," "loaf," "spoonful," etc. We will study a few of the most common counters.

Exercise 5. Repetition.

-gae	counter for common objects, never used for people	
hangae		1
tugae		2
segae		3
negae		4
tasōtgae		5
yōsōtgae		6
ilgopgae		7
yōdōlgae		8
ahopgae		9
yōlgae		10
yōlhangae		11
yōltugae		12
yōlsegae		13
yōlnegae		14
yōltasōtgae		15
yōlyōsōtgae		16
yōlilgopgae		17
yōlyōdōlgae		18
yōlahopgae		19

NOTE: Hana, tul, set and net drop the final a, l and t when they are used with a counter.

Exercise 6. Say in Korean.

- a. 11 c. 8 e. 15 g. 13 i. 10
b. 2 d. 4 f. 19 h. 17 j. 6

Exercise 7. Repetition.

sagwa

pae

milgam

shigye

apple

pear

tangerine

watch/clock (timepiece)

Exercise 8. Repetition.

sagwa hangae	1 apple
pae tugae	2 pears
milgam segae	3 tangerines
shigye negae	4 clocks
sagwa tasōtgae	5 apples
pae yōsōtgae	6 pears
milgam ilgopgae	7 tangerines
shigye yōdōlgae	8 clocks
sagwa ahopgae	9 apples
pae yōlgae	10 pears
shigye yōlhangae	11 clocks
milgam yōltugae	12 tangerines
pae yōlsegae	13 pears
sagwa yōlnegae	14 apples
shigye yōltasōtgae	15 clocks
milgam yōlyōsōtgae	16 tangerines
pae yōlilgopgae	17 pears
sagwa yōlyōdōlgae	18 apples
shigye yōlahopgae	19 clocks

issūmnikka	is/are there	do you have
issūmnida	there is/are	I have

NOTE: The Korean language does not use different forms for singular and plural numbers. For example, you would use issūmnida whether you have one item or 100. There is a word to indicate plurality, but it is not always required.

You learned in Unit 1 that -imnida and -imnikka are used to say "he/she/it is" or "they are," as in Ibuni Williams pyōngjang-imnida. "This person IS SGT Williams." You would use the same expression to say "This is an apple." It is a statement about WHO or WHAT someone or something is. When you talk about the WHEREABOUTS of a person or thing or ask if someone has something, you will use issūmnikka and issūmnida. For example, Sagwa issūmnikka? and Sagwa issūmnida.

Exercise 9. Repetition.

issūmnikka	do you have/are there
issūmnida	I have/there are
Sagwa issūmnikka?	Are there [some] apples?
Ne. Sagwa yōltugae issūmnida.	Yes. There are 12 apples.
Pae issūmnikka?	Are there pears?
Ne. Pae tasōtgae issūmnida.	Yes. There are 5 pears.
Shigye issūmnikka?	Do you have a watch?
Ne. Shigye hangae issūmnida.	Yes. I have a watch.
Milgam issūmnikka?	Do you have [any] tangerines?
Ne. Milgam yōlnegae issūmnida.	Yes. I have 14 tangerines.

Exercise 10.

You hear: Sagwa issūmnikka? 2
 Say: Ne. Sagwa tugae issūmnida.

Exercise 11. Repetition.

myōt	how many
myōtgae	how many of them
sagwa myōtgae	how many apples
shigye myōtgae	how many clocks
pae myōtgae	how many pears
Sagwa myōtgae issūmnikka?	How many apples are there?
Sagwa segae issūmnida.	There are 3 apples.

Exercise 12. Say in English.



Exercise 13. Say in Korean.



Do you have a watch?
 There are some apples.
 How many pears do you have?
 How many tangerines are there?
 There are 2 clocks.

Exercise 14. Repetition.

-saram	counter for people
-bun	counter for people (higher status)
myōtsaram	how many persons
myōtbun	how many persons (higher status)
changgyo myōtbun	how many officers
changgyo hanbun	1 officer
changgyo nebun	4 officers
yukkun myōtsaram	how many soldiers
hasagwan yōlhansaram	11 NCOs
yukkun yōlsaram	10 soldiers

NOTE: -saram is used to count people of the same or lower status than the speaker and -bun is for people of higher status.

Exercise 15. Say in Korean.

12 officers
 3 soldiers
 14 NCOs
 9 officers
 17 soldiers



NOTE: Kyeshimnikka and kyeshimnida are used instead of issūmnikka and issūmnida when you talk about a person or persons to whom you show respect.

Exercise 16. Repetition.

kyeshimnikka	is/are there
kyeshimnida	there is/are
Yukkun myōtsaram issūmnikka?	How many soldiers are there?
Yukkun tasōtsaram issūmnida.	There are 5 soldiers.
Changgyo myōtbun kyeshimnikka?	How many officers are there?
Changgyo yōlsebun kyeshimnida.	There are 13 officers.

Exercise 17. Say in English.



Exercise 18.



You hear: changgyo hanbun

Say: Changgyo hanbun kyeshimnida.

Exercise 19. Say in Korean.

Are there any officers?

There is 1 Army officer.

How many Army personnel are there?

There are 18 apples.

There are 2 lieutenant colonels.

Exercise 20. Repetition.

Chushipshio.

Please give me.

Sagwa yōltugae chushipshio.

Please give me 12 apples.

Milgam yōlgae chushipshio.

Please give me 10 tangerines.

Pae yōltasōtgae chushipshio.

Please give me 15 pears.

Exercise 21.

You hear: sagwa yōlhangae

Say: Sagwa yōlhangae chushipshio.

Exercise 22. Listening Comprehension.

- a. How many officers are there?
- b. What did he ask for?
- c. What kind of person is there?
- d. How many tangerines does he want?
- e. How many Air Force NCOs are there?



Unju Temple near Gwangju

Photo: Steve46814
Date: 30 Oct 2007
cc-by-sa-3.0

UNIT 2, LESSON 2

SINO-KOREAN NUMBERS 1 - 10

il	1
i	2
sam	3
sa	4
o	5
yuk	6
ch'il	7
p'al	8
ku	9
ship	10

Exercise 1. Repetition.

il, i, sam, sa, o

1, 2, 3, 4, 5

yuk, ch'il, p'al, ku, ship

6, 7, 8, 9, 10

Exercise 2. Say in Korean.

a. 1	e. 5	i. 9	m. 1	q. 6
b. 2	f. 6	j. 10	n. 4	r. 8
c. 3	g. 7	k. 3	o. 5	s. 10
d. 4	h. 8	l. 2	p. 7	t. 9

SINO-KOREAN NUMBERS 11 - 19

The numbers from 11 to 19 are formed in the following manner:
10+1, 10+2, 10+3. . . 10+9.

Exercise 3. Repetition.

shibil	11	shimnyuk	16
shibi	12	shipch'il	17
shipsam	13	shipp'al	18
shipsa	14	shipku	19
shibo	15		

NOTE: Ship (10) becomes shib- when combined with -il, -i or -o.

Ship changes to shim- and yuk (6) to -nyuk to make 16.

Exercise 4. Say in Korean. 

a. 11	e. 15	i. 19	m. 17	q. 12
b. 12	f. 16	j. 14	n. 15	r. 11
c. 13	g. 17	k. 18	o. 19	s. 10
d. 14	h. 18	l. 13	p. 16	

Exercise 5. Say in English. SINO-KOREAN NUMBERS 20 - 99

The numbers from 20 to 99 are formed in the same manner as 11 through 19. You will first go through the multiples of ten:

Exercise 6. Repetition.

iship	20
samship	30
saship	40
oship	50
yukship	60
ch'ilship	70
p'alship	80
kuship	90

Exercise 7. Repetition.

iship, samship, saship, oship	20, 30, 40, 50
yukship, ch'ilship, p'alship, kuship	60, 70, 80, 90

Exercise 8. Say in English.



NOTE: The sound changes you have seen in shibil (11), shibi (12), shibo (15), and shimnyuk (16) will occur in 21, 22, 25, 26, 31, 32, 35, 36, etc., up to 96.

Exercise 9. Repetition.

iship	20
ishibil	21
ishibi	22
samshipsam	33
samshipsa	34
samshibo	35
sashimnyuk	46
sashipch'il	47
sashipp'al	48
oshipku	59
yukship	60
yukshibil	61
yukshibi	62
ch'ilshipsam	73
ch'ilshipsa	74
ch'ilshibo	75
p'alshimnyuk	86
p'alshipch'il	87
p'alshipp'al	88
kushipku	99

Exercise 10. Say in English.



Exercise 11. Say in Korean.



- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| a. 37 | d. 48 | g. 53 | j. 41 |
| b. 72 | e. 67 | h. 96 | k. 32 |
| c. 26 | f. 81 | i. 25 | l. 66 |

SINO-KOREAN NUMBERS 100 - 999

For numbers from 100, Sino-Korean numbers are normally used. Also, money is always counted in Sino-Korean numbers.

Exercise 12. Repetition.

paek	100
ibaek	200
sambaek	300
sabaek	400
obaek	500
yukpaek	600
ch'ilbaek	700
p'albaek	800
kubaek	900

NOTE: The number 100 is normally read as paek. It is rarely read ilbaek.

Except for 100, paek, and 600, yukpaek, the word "hundred" is pronounced baek.

Exercise 13. Repetition.

paegiship	120
paegoship	150
paekch'iship	170
ibaegoship	250
ibaekp'alship	280
obaeksaship	540
yukpaeksamship	630
kubaegoship	950

Exercise 14. Say in English.



Exercise 15. Repetition.

kapshi	price
ōlmamnikka?	How much is it/are they?
Kapshi ōlmamnikka?	How much is the price?
wōn	Korean monetary unit
paegwōn	100 won
Paegwōnimnida.	It is 100 won.
kubaegwōn	900 won
Kubaegwōnimnida.	It is 900 won.
tambae	cigarette(s)
Tambae ōlmamnikka?	How much are the cigarettes?

NOTE: Remember that paek changes to paeg when i or o follows it. This also happens when -won follows it.

Tambae kapshi ōlmamnikka?	How much is the price of cigarettes?
k'ōp'i	coffee
hanjan	a cup, a glass
k'ōp'i hanjan	a cup of coffee
K'ōp'i hanjan chushipshio.	Please give me a cup of coffee.
K'ōp'i hanjan ōlmamnikka?	How much is a cup of coffee?
saida	lemon-lime soda
tubyōng	2 bottles
Saida tubyōng chushipshio.	Please give me 2 bottles of lemon-lime soda.
Saida tubyōng ōlmamnikka?	How much are 2 bottles of lemon-lime soda?
Saida tubyōng p'albaegwōnimnida.	Two bottles of lemon-lime soda are 800 won.
pōsū	bus
pōsū yogūm	bus fare
Pōsū yogūm yukpaegwōnimnida.	The bus fare is 600 won.
ōpsūmnida	there is not
Tambae issūmnikka?	Do you have cigarettes?
Tambae ōpsūmnida.	I don't have cigarettes.
Shigye ōpsūmnida.	I don't have a watch.

NOTE: -jan is the counter for cups or glasses.

-byōng is the counter for bottles.

ōpsūmnida is the negative of issūmnida. Notice that it is not an issūmnida. Earlier you learned that an was used in negative expressions, for example an pappūmnida. However, issūmnida is an exception; the negative form will always be ōpsūmnida.

Exercise 16. Say in English.



TO MAKE THE NEGATIVE FORM:
issūmnida becomes ōpsūmnida
 BUT:
kyeshimnida becomes an kyeshimnida

The negative form an kyeshimnida follows the general rule for making negative statements. Again, ōpsūmnida is an exception.

Remember that kyeshimnida and an kyeshimnida are used only for people, and that they are used to show respect for another's rank or status.

Exercise 17.

You hear: Changgyo kyeshimnida.
 Say: Changgyo an kyeshimnida.

OR

You hear: Hasagwan issūmnida.
 Say: Hasagwan ōpsūmnida.

Exercise 18. Role Play.



- a. Ask the price of apples.
- b. Ask for 4 apples.
- c. Ask if he has tangerines.
- d. Ask for 10 tangerines.

Exercise 19. Say in Korean.



Please give me a cup of coffee.

Do you have cigarettes?

The bus fare is 700 won.

Please give me a bottle of lemon-lime soda.

The price of coffee is 600 won.

Exercise 20. Conversation for Listening Comprehension.

- a. How much are the cigarettes?
- b. What costs 400 won?
- c. How much coffee was ordered?
- d. Does he have apples?
- e. What price did he ask about?



Beomeosa Sallyeonggak shrine, Busan

Photo: Steve46814
Date: 17 Nov 2007
cc-by-sa-3.0

UNIT 2, LESSON 3

NUMBERS 1,000 - 9,999

Remember that for numbers beyond 100, Sino-Korean numbers are normally used.

ch'ōn	1,000
ich'ōn	2,000
samch'ōn	3,000
sach'ōn	4,000
och'ōn	5,000
yukch'ōn	6,000
ch'ilch'ōn	7000
p'alch'ōn	8,000
kuch'ōn	9,000

NOTE: Like paek, 1,000 is normally read ch'ōn, "thousand." It is rarely read ilch'ōn, "one thousand."

Exercise 1. Repetition.

ch'ōn ibaek	1,200
ch'ōn obaek	1,500
ich'ōn yukpaek	2,600
samch'ōn ch'ilbaek	3,700
sach'ōn p'albaek	4,800
och'ōn obaek	5,500
yukch'ōn sambaek	6,300
ch'ilch'ōn ch'ilbaek	7,700
p'alch'ōn yukbaek	8,600
kuch'ōn obaek	9,500
ch'ōn oship	1,050
ich'ōn kuship	2,090

NOTE: Zeros are not read.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



a. 3,510	d. 1,040	g. 4,773	j. 9,001
b. 2,920	e. 5,555	h. 6,490	
c. 9,031	f. 7,150	i. 8,080	

SINO-KOREAN NUMBERS BEYOND 10,000

The English counting system uses 1,000 as the basic unit for numbers up to six digits (999,999). Korean, on the other hand, uses 10,000 as the basic unit for numbers from five to eight digits, as shown below:

Exercise 4. Repetition.

man	10,000	(1 x 10,000)
iman	20,000	(2 x 10,000)
samman	30,000	(3 x 10,000)
saman	40,000	(4 x 10,000)
oman	50,000	(5 x 10,000)
yungman	60,000	(6 x 10,000)
ch'ilman	70,000	(7 x 10,000)
p'alman	80,000	(8 x 10,000)
kuman	90,000	(9 x 10,000)
shimman	100,000	(10 x 10,000)

NOTE: 10,000 is normally read man, but rarely ilman.

Samman and saman may sound alike, so be sure to pronounce m twice in sam-man.

In 60,000, yuk is pronounced yung because of the m in man.

Ship- changes to shim- in 10,000 due to the m which follows the p.

Exercise 5. Say in Korean. 

10,000	46,000 won
30,000	73,000 won
40,000	95,000 won
60,000	100,000 won

Exercise 6. Repetition.

paengman	1,000,000
sabaengman	4,000,000
yukbaengman	6,000,000
ch'ōnman	10,000,000
ich'ōnman	20,000,000

NOTE: Paek is pronounced paeng- in "million" due to the m which follows k.

Exercise 7. Say in Korean. 

2,000,000 won
5,000,000 won
10,000,000 won
30,000,000 won
70,000,000 won

Exercise 8. Say in English. 

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- Storekeeper: Ōsō oshipshio. Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka? Come right in. What are you looking for?
- David Jones: Ch'imdae ch'atsūmnida. I'm looking for a bed.
- Storekeeper: Ne. Yōgi issūmnida. Yes. Here they are.
- David Jones: Igō ōlmamnikka? How much is this one?
- Storekeeper: Yukship sammanwōnimnida. It's 630,000 won.
- David Jones: Kūrōssūmnikka? Kūrōm, migukton ōlmamnikka? Is that so? Then how much is it in American money?
- Storekeeper: Yosae hwannyul ilbure p'albaegwōnimnida. Kūrōnikka, ch'ilbaek-p'alshipch'ilbul oshipchōnimnida. The exchange rate these days is 800 won for a dollar. Therefore, it is \$787.50.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Ōsō is "quickly" or "right away," and -oshipshio is "please come." This is a standard phrase used to urge someone to "Step right in."

Mwō is "what" and ch'ajūshimnikka is "are you looking for." This is used by storekeepers the same way Americans use "May I."

Ch'atsūmnida is the statement form of ch'ajūshimnikka. Notice that ch'ajū- changes to ch'at-. David doesn't use -shi because he is the one looking for a bed. When the speaker is the subject, -shi is not used.

Yōgi refers to the place near the person speaking.

Igō is i-, "this" and -gō, "thing."

Miguk is "the United States."

Ton means "money," so migukton means "American money."

Kūrōnikka means "therefore," "so," or "accordingly."

Bul means "dollar" and -e means "for." Note that bul is pronounced bur- when -e follows it.

Chōn refers to "cent."

Exercise 9. Repetition.

ch'imdae	bed
Ch'imdae issūmnikka?	Do you have beds?
sop'a	sofa
Sop'a ōlmamnikka?	How much is the sofa?
t'eibūl	table
T'eibūl kumanwōnimnida.	The table is ₩ 90,000.
tamnyo	blanket
Tamnyo issūmnikka?	Do you have blankets?
hwannyul	exchange rate
Hwannyul ōlmamnikka?	How much is the exchange rate? What is the exchange rate?
hanguk	Korea
hangukton	Korean money
Hangukton ōpsūmnida.	I don't have Korean money.
ilbul	a dollar
Ilbul hangukton ōlmamnikka?	How much is a dollar in Korean money?
miguk	United States
migukton	American money
Migukton ōlmamnikka?	How much is it in American money?

Exercise 10. Say in English.



Exercise 11.

You hear: 1,000 won
Say: Ch'ōnwōn migukton ōlmamnikka?

30,000 won

54,000 won

9,000 won

8,500 won

70,000 won

Exercise 12.

You hear: bed, 80,000 won
Say: Ch'imdae p'almanwōnimnikka?

table, 20,000 won

blanket, 35,000 won

exchange rate, 800 won

bed, 60,000 won

Exercise 13. Say in Korean. 

How much is it in American money?

What's the exchange rate?

How much is a dollar in Korean money?

I'm looking for blankets.

I don't have any Korean money.

Exercise 14. Review.

Exercise 15. Role Play. 

- a. Say that you are looking for a bed.
- b. Ask how much this one is.
- c. Ask how much that is in American money.



Stele at Guinsa, located near Danyang

Photo: Steve46814
Date: 16 Oct 2007
cc-by-sa-3.0

UNIT 2

SELF-EVALUATION QUIZ

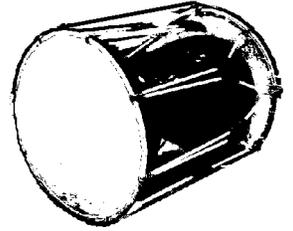


Photo: Visviva
Public Domain

Situation 1. You're David Jones. While walking down the street, you see a fruit stand.

- a. Ask the store owner if he has pears.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. Tell him to give you four of them.
- d. You see that he also has tangerines. Ask how much they are.

Situation 2. You and your friend Mike Williams are supposed to meet SFC Yi at a coffeeshop.

- a. ON TAPE ONLY.
- b. Order two cups of coffee.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.

Situation 3. SFC Yi finally arrives and sits down with you.

- a. Ask the waitress to bring a bottle of lemon-lime soda for SFC Yi.
- b. You forgot to bring your cigarettes with you, so you decide to ask SFC Yi if he has any. What do you say?
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.

Situation 4. You're Jim Harris. You're out shopping and you step into a store that sells quilts and blankets.

- a. ON TAPE ONLY.
- b. Tell him you're looking for blankets.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. Ask how much it is in American money.

Situation 5. You're in another store now; you want to purchase something, but you're not sure about the price.

- a. Ask, "How much is a dollar in Korean money?"
- b. The store owner didn't understand, so you repeat the question a little differently. Ask what the exchange rate is.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.

UNIT 3

SHOPPING



Shopping Arcade, Seoul

Photo: Arthur Chapman
Date: 13 Oct 2006
cc-by-2.0

UNIT 3

OBJECTIVES

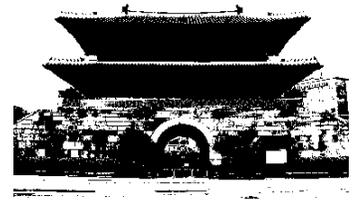


Photo: Gaël Chardon
cc-by-sa-2.0

At the end of Unit 3, you will be able to:

1. Ask the total price for several items.
2. Ask a storekeeper to show you specific items.
3. Bargain by making a counter offer.
4. State your intention to buy several items.
5. Ask for a reduction in price.
6. Specify the items you will purchase.
7. Ask for specific colors or sizes.
8. Say that something is too expensive/large/small.



Rows of janggu drums

Photo: meigooni
Date: 16 Jan 2006
cc-by-2.0

UNIT 3, LESSON 1

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
ce-by-sa-2.0

- Storekeeper: Ōsō oshipshio.
Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka? Come right in. What are you looking for?
- David Jones: Tambae issūmnikka? Do you have cigarettes?
- Storekeeper: Ne. Yōgi issūmnida. Yes. They're right here.
- David Jones: Sol chushipshio.
Ōlmamnikka? Give me a pack of Sol.
How much is it?
- Storekeeper: Obaegwōnimnida. It's 500 won.
- David Jones: Ne. Tugap chushipshio.
Kūri-go, saida issūmnikka? Okay. Give me two packs.
And do you have lemon-lime soda?
- Storekeeper: Ne. Saidanūn chōgi
issūmnida. Hanbyōnge sabaegwōnimnida. Yes, the lemon-lime soda is over there. It's 400 won a bottle.
- David Jones: Hanbyōng chushipshio.
Modu ōlmamnikka? Give me one bottle please.
How much is it altogether?
- Storekeeper: Modu ch'ōn sabaegwōnimnida. Altogether it is 1,400 won.
- David Jones: Yōgi issūmnida. Here you are.
- Storekeeper: Ne. Kamsahamnida.
Tto oshipshio. Okay. Thank you. Please come again.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Sol, "Pine," is one of the most common Korean cigarette brands.

-gap is the counter for "pack," as in "a pack of cigarettes."

Kūrigo means "and," "besides" or "in addition," but it is only used at the beginning of a sentence.

Remember that -nūn in saidanūn indicates saida is the subject, the thing they are talking about.

Chōgi refers to a place away from the people who are talking. It means "over there."

Hanbyōnge is hanbyōng, "one bottle," and -e, "for."

Modu means "all" or "altogether."

Yōgi issūmnida may be expressed as "here you are" when you hand something over to another person. It literally means "here it is."

In Korea, when you give something to or receive something from another person, it is a sign of politeness to use both hands. If you remember to use this gesture when you deal with Korean people, they will appreciate your courtesy.

Tto oshipshio, "Please come again," may also be used by a host to his departing guests.

EXERCISES

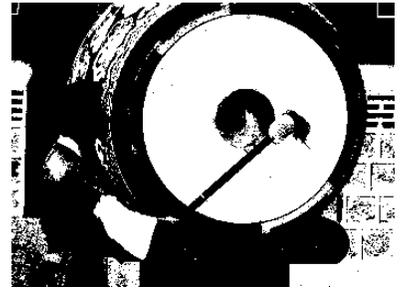


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Kim sōnsaengnim, ōsō oshipshio.

Mr. Kim, come right in.

Shigyenūn chōgi issūmnida.

Watches are over there.

Kamsahamnida.

Thank you.

Tto oshipshio.

Please come again.

Pak taeryōngnim, Yi chungwinim ch'ajūshimnikka?

COL Pak, are you looking for 1LT Yi?

Shillejiman, mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?

Excuse me, but what are you looking for?

Kūrigo k'ōp'i chushipshio.

And please give me some coffee.

Modu ōlmamnikka?

How much is it altogether?

Chōgi ch'imdae ōlmamnikka?

How much is the bed over there?

Sagwa tasōtgae chushipshio.

Please give me five apples.

K'olla tubyōnge p'albaegwōnimnida.

It's 800 won for two bottles of cola.

Shillejiman, tamnyo issūmnikka?

Excuse me, but do you have blankets?

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



Mr. Kim, come right in.

And do you have blankets?

It's 300 won for two pears.

Excuse me, but what are you looking for?

Thank you. Come again next week.

How much is a cup of coffee?

Exercise 4. Repetition.

maekchu

beer (generally, bottled)

Maekchu hanbyōnge ōlmam-
nikka?

How much is it for one bottle
of beer?

Maekchu yōsōtbyōng
chushipshio.

Please give me six bottles of
beer.

saeng maekchu

draft beer

Yōgi saeng maekchu issūm-
nikka?

Do you have draft beer here?

Kūrōm, saeng maekchu tujan
chushipshio.

Well then, please give me two
glasses of draft beer.

Komapsūmnida.

Thank you.

Kim ilbyōng, komapsūmnida.

Thank you, PFC Kim.

NOTE: Komapsūmnida is an alternative to Kamsahamnida. However, Kamsahamnida is more common.

Exercise 5. Say in English.



Exercise 6. Say in Korean.



How much is a glass of draft beer?

Please give me four bottles of cola.

Thank you, PFC Kim.

A glass of beer is 600 won.

Do you have draft beer here?

Exercise 7.

You hear: one glass of beer

Say: Maekchu hanjan chushipshio.

one bottle of beer

two cups of coffee

three bottles of cola

two glasses of draft beer

one glass of cola

Exercise 8.

You hear: watch

Say: Yōgi shigye issūmnikka?

pear

apple

tangerine

blanket

cigarettes

Exercise 9.

You hear: one apple

Say: Sagwa hangaeē ōlmamnikka?

five pears

three glasses of beer

four tangerines

two bottles of cola

10 apples

Exercise 10.

You hear: cigarettes

Say: Tambae ch'ajūshimnikka?

CPT Pak

watch

draft beer

lemon-lime soda

Miss Kim

Exercise 11.

You hear: CPT Yi

Say: Yi taewinim, ōsō oshipshio.

2LT Kim

COL Pak

LTC Ch'we

MAJ Chang

Mr. Cho

Exercise 12.

You hear: Miss Kim

Say: Misū Kim, annyōngghi kashipshio. Tto oshipshio.

Mr. Yi

Miss Ch'we

COL Pak

CPT Chang

Exercise 13. Role Play.

- a. Ask if he has cola.
- b. Ask the price of cola.
- c. Ask for two bottles; then ask if he has any beer.
- d. Ask for one bottle and then ask how much it is altogether.
- e. Give the storekeeper the money.
- f. Say, "Good-bye."

Exercise 14. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Buddhist temple entrance, Gyeongju

Photo: Pachinee Buathong
Date: 11 Jun 2007
cc-by-sa-2.0

Storekeeper: Ōsō oseyo. Mwō ch'ajūseyo?

David Jones: Tambae issōyo?

Storekeeper: Ne. Yōgi issōyo.

David Jones: Sol chuseyo. Ōlmayeyo?

Storekeeper: Obaegwōnyeyo.

David Jones: Ne. Tugap chuseyo. Kūrigo, saida issōyo?

Storekeeper: Saidanūn chōgi issōyo. Hanbyōnge sabaegwōnyeyo.

David Jones: Hanbyōng chuseyo. Modu ōlmayeyo?

Storekeeper: Modu ch'ōn sabaegwōnyeyo.

David Jones: Yōgi issōyo.

Storekeeper: Ne. Kamsahamnida. Tto oseyo.



Bulguksa in Gyeongju

Photo: nzj©
Date: 2 Oct 2007
cc-by-3.0

UNIT 3, LESSON 2

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- Storekeeper: Ōsō oshipshio. Tamnyo ch'ajūshimnikka? Come right in! Are you looking for blankets?
- David Jones: Ne. Tamnyohago ibul chom popshida. Yes. Let me see some blankets and quilts.
- Storekeeper: Yōgi mani issūmnida. We have lots of them here.
- David Jones: Tamnyo igō ōlmamnikka? How much is this blanket?
- Storekeeper: Samman och'ōnwōnimnida. It's 35,000 won.
- David Jones: Sammanwōne hapshida. Let's make it 30,000 won.
- Storekeeper: Kollanhamnida. Samman samch'ōnwon chushipshio. I can't do that. Give me 33,000 won.
- David Jones: Tugae sagessūmnida. Ssage hapshida. I am going to buy two. Let's make it cheap.
- Storekeeper: Tugae yungman sa-ch'ōnwōn ōttōssūmnikka? How about 64,000 won for two?
- David Jones: Chossūmnida. Kūrōm, ch'oroksaek ibulhago ppalgansaek tamnyo hanassik chushipshio. That's good. Well, then give me one each of the green quilts and the red blankets.
- Storekeeper: Ne. Algessūmnida. Yes. I understand.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

-hago, like kūriigo which you already know, means "and."
But -hago is only used between the names of two people or things
while kūriigo starts a sentence.

Chom, "a little," is used in a request without adding its
literal meaning. It makes the request a little more polite.

Popshida is po-, "to see" or "to look at," and -pshida,
"let's." Popshida literally means "let's look at," but here
it's understood as "let me see."

-pshida is the suggestion ending, meaning "let's." For
example, kapshida would be "let's go."

Mani, "a lot" or "many," is only used with a verb.

Tamnyo igō is "this blanket." In Korean, this is said in
reverse order: tamnyo, "blanket," then igō, "this." Koreans
mention the general type of item first, "blanket," and then get
more specific with "this one."

Hapshida literally means "let's do" or "let's make." When
you're bargaining and you want to say, "Let's make it..."
-e is added to the price. For example, Sach'ōnwōne hapshida,
"Let's make it 4,000 won."

Kollanhamnida means "It's difficult" or "That's hard to do."
When a shopowner says this, he's really saying, "No way!"

Ssage is only used with verbs. It is never used with the name
of an object, as in ssage tamnyo, "cheap blanket."

Tugae is tugae, "two," and -e "for." Therefore, the last -e
is pronounced as a separate syllable after -gae.

Ōttōssūmnikka means "how is" or "how about."

Ch'orok means "green" and saek, "color." Saek is often used
with the words denoting colors. "Green" may also be referred to
as noksaek.

-ssik means "each" or "per." For example, tulssik means "two
each."

EXERCISES

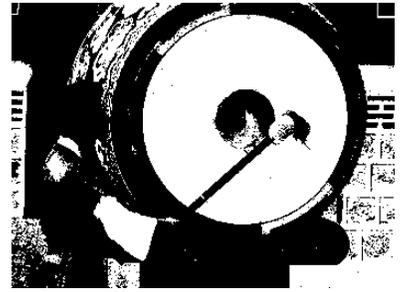


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Ibul chom popshida.

Let me see some quilts, please.

Tamnyohago ibul chom popshida.

Let me see some blankets and quilts, please.

Shigye yōgi mani issūmnida.

We have lots of watches here.

Shigye igō ōlmamnikka?

How much is this watch?

Ibul igō ssage hapshida.

Let's make this quilt cheap.

Tamnyo igō samanwōne hapshida.

Let's make this blanket 40,000 won.

Shigye igō sammanwōne chushipshio.

Please give me this watch for 30,000 won.

Igō tugae sagessūmnida; chom ssage chushipshio.

I'm going to buy two of these; give them to me cheap.

Igō tugae sach'ōnwōn ōttōssūmnikka?

How about 4,000 won for two of these?

Ibulhago tamnyo hanassik chushipshio.

Give me one each of the quilts and the blankets.

Igō samman och'ōnwōnimnida.

This is 35,000 won.

Chossūmnida.

That's good.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



I will buy two of these.

Let's make this quilt cheap.

How much is this red blanket?

Do you have green quilts?

How about two for 4,000 won?

Exercise 4.



You hear: Hamnida.

Say: An hamnida.

Exercise 5. Repetition.

saek	color
ppalgansaek	red
ppalgansaek ibul	red quilt
ch'oroksaek	green
ch'oroksaek tamnyo	green blankets
hinsaek	white
hinsaek ibul	white quilt
kkamansaek	black
kkamansaek t'eibūl	black table
p'aransaek	blue
p'aransaek sop'a	blue sofa
noransaek	yellow
noransaek tamnyo	yellow blanket
orenjisaek	orange
orenjisaek ibul	orange quilt
peijisaek	beige
peijisaek tamnyo	beige blanket

NOTE: P'aransaek, "blue," is sometimes used in Korean to refer to "green," particularly to describe grass, trees, or leaves. However, for other common objects, only ch'oroksaek is used to mean "green."

Exercise 6. Say in English.



Exercise 7.

You hear: red blanket

Say: Ppalgansaek tamnyo issūmnikka?

yellow quilt

blue blanket

black watch

green quilt

white blanket

Exercise 8.

You hear: green blanket

Say: Ch'oroksaek tamnyo chom popshida.

yellow table

red apples

white blanket

green sofa

beige blanket

Exercise 9.

You hear: blanket, 30,000

Say: Tamnyo igō sammanwōne hapshida.

watch, 3,000

sofa, 60,000

bed, 70,000

quilt, 9,500

blanket, 8,500

Exercise 10. Say in Korean.

Are you looking for yellow blankets?

Do you have white quilts?

Let me see this beige sofa.

Make this orange quilt cheap.

Give me a black quilt and a white quilt.

Exercise 11. Listening Comprehension.

- a. What costs 28,000 won?
- b. What price did they agree on for the blankets?
- c. How much is the watch?
- d. How much is it in dollars?
- e. What costs 1,300 won?

Exercise 12.

You hear: 3,700 won
Say: Igō samch'ōn ch'ilbaegwōne chushipshio.

2,800 won

45,000 won

6,500 won

3,200 won

50,000 won

Exercise 13.

You hear: two
Say: Igō tugae ssage hapshida.

three

five

seven

nine

twelve

Exercise 14. Role Play.

- a. Say that you are looking for a blanket.
- b. Ask the price of the blanket that you are pointing at.
- c. Say that you'll buy two and ask for a cheap price.
- d. Say, "OK," and ask for a red blanket and a blue blanket.

Exercise 15. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Insadong area in Seoul

Photo: Chino Lemus
Date: 7 Aug 2007
cc-by-sa-2.0

Storekeeper: Ōsō oseyo. Tamnyo ch'ajūseyo?

David Jones: Ne. Tamnyohago ibul chom popshida.

Storekeeper: Yōgi mani issōyo.

David Jones: Tamnyo igō ōlmayeyo?

Storekeeper: Samman och'ōnwōnyeyo.

David Jones: Sammanwōne hapshida.

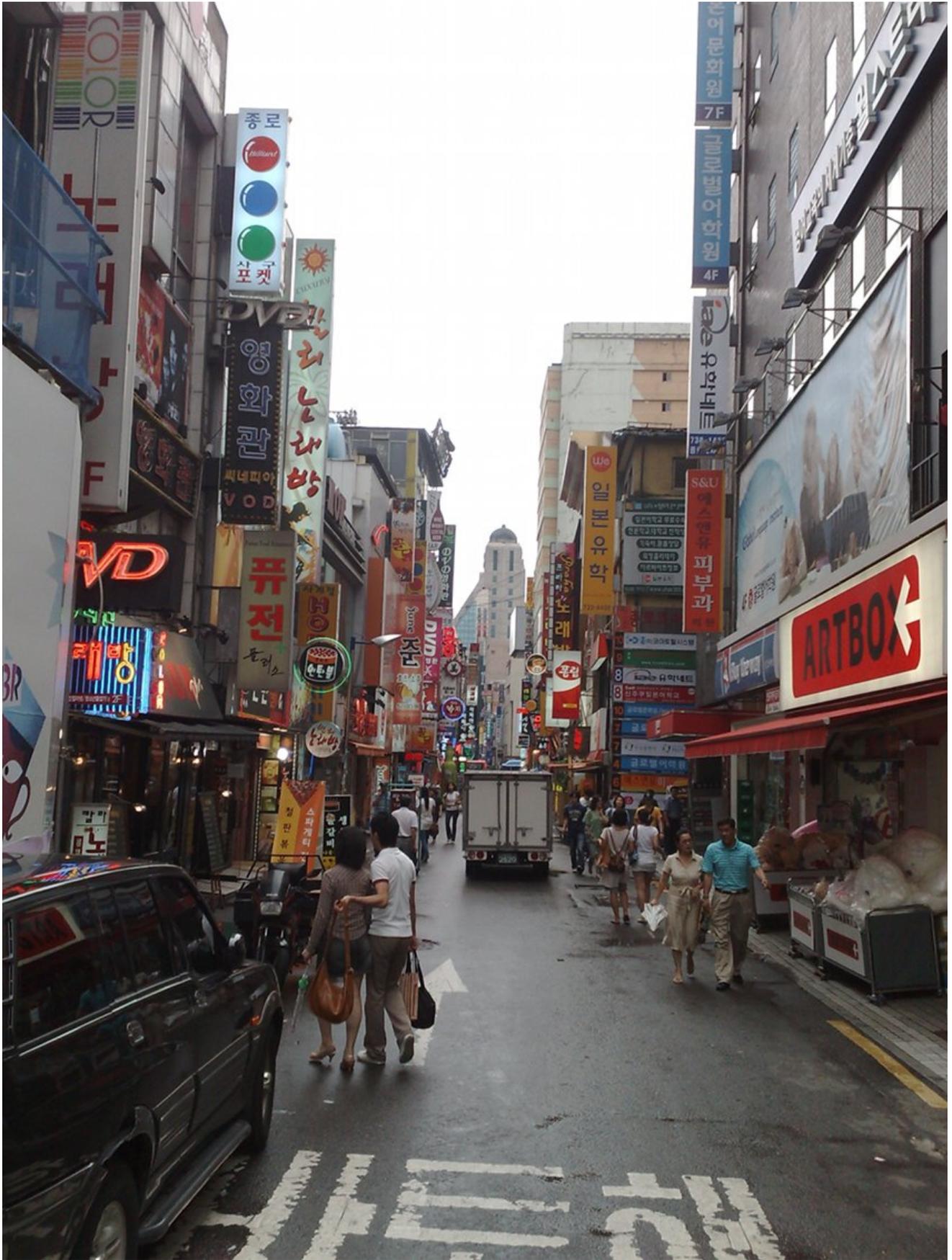
Storekeeper: Kollanhamnida. Samman samch'ōnwōn chuseyo.

David Jones: Tugae sagessōyo. Ssage hapshida.

Storekeeper: Tugae yungman sach'ōnwōn ōttōssūmnikka?

David Jones: Choayo. Kūrōm ch'oroksaek ibulhago ppalgansaek tamnyo hanassik chuseyo.

Storekeeper: Ne. Algessōyo.



Street in Seoul located at 37° 34' 9.61" N, 126° 59' 8.7" E

Photo: Tim Walker
Date: 18 Aug 2008
cc-by-2.0

UNIT 3, LESSON 3

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- David Jones: Ch'ōngbaji igō ōlmam-nikka? How much are these blue jeans?
- Storekeeper: Man ich'ōnwōnimnida. They're 12,000 won.
- David Jones: Saijū samshipsa ōpsūm-nikka? Don't you have size 34?
- Storekeeper: Yōgi issūmnida. Ibōbo-shipshio. I have them right here. Try them on.
- * * *
- Storekeeper: Chal matsūmnida. They fit well.
- David Jones: Kūlsseyo.... Well, I'm not so sure....
- Storekeeper: Aju pogi chossūmnida. They look really good.
- David Jones: Nōmu pissamnida. Man-wōne hapshida. They're too expensive. Let's make it 10,000 won.
- Storekeeper: Ne. Kūrōm manwōn chushipshio. Okay. Then give me 10,000 won.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Ch'ōng is another word for "blue." It is not used by itself, but only with saek or as part of a compound word.

Ch'ōngbaji specifically refers to blue jeans. Baji is a general word for pants.

Saijū is simply the Korean pronunciation of the English word "size." Pants sizes are usually measured in inches.

Ōpsūmnikka, the question form of ōpsūmnida, means "don't you have" or "isn't/aren't there any?"

Ibōbo- in ibōboshiphio means "to try on." It is only used for clothes. For trying on other things, different verbs are used.

Kūsseyo is an expression used to show that one is not fully sure or satisfied. It is pronounced with a prolonged intonation. It is translated here as "Well, I'm not so sure..."

Pissa- means "to be expensive."



Street in south Seoul at 37° 30' 31.83" N, 127° 3' 45.6" E

Photo: Marcin Bialek
Date: 31 Jul 2010
cc-by-sa-3.0

EXERCISES

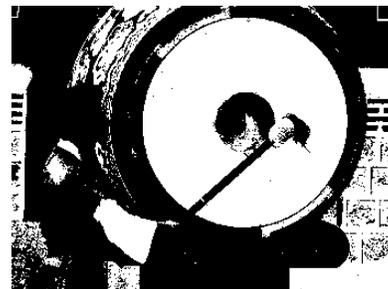


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Yōgi ch'ōngbaji ōpsūmnikka?

Don't you have blue jeans here?

Saijū samshibo ōpsūmnikka?

Don't you have size 35?

Ch'ōngbaji igō ibōboshipshio.

Try these blue jeans on.

Aju chal matsūmnida

It fits very well.

Ch'ōngbaji igō aju chal matsūmnida.

These blue jeans fit very well.

Aju pogi chossūmnida.

They look very good.

Pogi an chossūmnida.

It doesn't look good.

Paji igō pogi an chossūmnida.

These pants don't look good.

Ch'ōngbaji igō ōlmamnikka?

How much are these blue jeans?

Manwōne ōttōssūmnikka?

How about 10,000 won?

Igō nōmu pissamnida.

It's too expensive.

Paji pyōllo an pissamnida.

The pants are not really expensive.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



Don't you have blue jeans here?

Do you have size 36?

How much are these blue jeans?

That's too expensive. Let's make it cheap.

Well, I'm not sure....

Exercise 4. Role Play.



- a. Say that you are looking for blue jeans.
- b. Ask the price of the pair you are pointing at.
- c. Ask if he has size 36.
- d. Say that they fit well.
- e. Ask for a lower price.
- f. Say, "OK."

Exercise 5. Repetition.

posōk	jewelry
Posōk nōmu pissamnida.	Jewelry is too expensive.
panji	ring
Panji yōgi mani issūmnida.	We have lots of rings here.
mokkōri	necklace
Mokkōri igō pogi chossūmnida.	This necklace looks nice.
kūm	gold
kūmbanji	gold ring
kūmmokkōri	gold necklace
kūmshigye	gold watch
paekkūm	platinum, white gold
paekkūmbanji	platinum ring
paekkūmmokkōri	platinum necklace
K'ūmnida.	It's big.
Kūmbanji igō nōmu k'ūmnida.	This gold ring is too big.
Paekkūmbanji an k'ūmnida.	The platinum ring is not big.
Chaksūmnida.	It's small.
Chom chaksūmnida.	It's a little small.
Mokkōri igō nōmu chaksūmnida.	This necklace is too small.
Ch'ōngbaji igō an chaksūmnida.	These blue jeans are not small.

NOTE: Panji is pronounced banji after m.

Exercise 6. Say in English.



Exercise 7. Say in Korean.



Do you have gold necklaces here?

Let me see some platinum rings.

It's too expensive.

This is not big.

This ring is too small.



Exercise 8.

You hear: Panji k'ūmnida.

Say: Panji an k'ūmnida.

Exercise 9.

You hear: blue jeans

Say: Ch'ōngbaji ōpsūmnikka?

necklace

American money

platinum rings

size 36

American cigarettes

Exercise 10.

You hear: jewelry

Say: Posōk igō nōmu pissamnida.

platinum necklace

gold ring

gold watch

blue jeans

Exercise 11.

You hear: this ring

Say: Panji igō chom chaksūmnida.

this bed

this table

this watch

these blue jeans

this necklace

Exercise 12. Say in Korean.

Do you have lots of jewelry here?

Let me see some rings and necklaces.

This platinum ring is too small.

Gold rings and gold necklaces are expensive.

Blue jeans are not expensive.

This ring is not small.

Exercise 13. Listening Comprehension Review.

- a. Who is leaving?
- b. What is Mr. Pak's occupation?
- c. When are they going to see each other again?
- d. When is Mr. Kim going to go?
- e. How much do the apples cost?

Exercise 14. Speaking Review. 

- a. Miss Chang asks if you are busy. Tell her you are not particularly busy.
- b. Miss Yi asks you if you are married. Tell her you are still single.
- c. You're SGT Williams, and your friend Mr. Kim just introduced a friend to you. Respond and introduce yourself.
- d. You are in a coffee shop:
 - (1) When the waitress greets you, order a cup of coffee.
 - (2) After she brings it, ask the price of the coffee.
- e. You are in a jewelry store:
 - (1) When the clerk greets you, ask her to show you some gold rings.
 - (2) After she brings them to you, you try one on. Tell her it's too small.

Exercise 15. Role Play. 

- a. Say that you want to see some jewelry.
- b. Ask the price of the platinum ring you are pointing at.
- c. Say that it's too small.
- d. Say that it fits well. Then offer 85,000 won.
- e. Agree and say that you also want to see necklaces.

Exercise 16. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Photo: dominica_1972
Date: 16 Mar 2007
cc-by-sa-2.0

Maitreya statue from the Goryeo period at Hyang'un-gak

David Jones: Ch'ōngbaji igō ōlmayeyo?

Storekeeper: Man ich'ōnwōnyeyo.

David Jones: Saijū samshipsa ōpsōyo?

Storekeeper: Yōgi issōyo. Ibōboseyo.

* * *

Storekeeper: Chal matsūmnida.

David Jones: Kūlsseyo.

Storekeeper: Aju pogi chossūmnida.

David Jones: Nōmu pissayo. Manwōne hapshida.

Storekeeper: Ne. Kūrōm, manwōn chuseyo.

UNIT 3

SELF-EVALUATION QUIZ

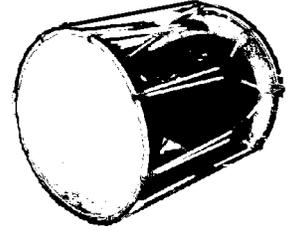


Photo: Visviva
Public Domain

Situation 1. You are Jim Harris. You stop in at a Korean blanket store to browse around.

- a. Ask the storekeeper to show you some blankets and quilts.
- b. You see one in particular that you like. Ask him, "How much is this quilt?"
- c. He says it's 25,000 won. Say, "Let's make it 20,000 won."
- d. ON TAPE ONLY.

Situation 2. You're still trying to bargain over the price of quilts.

- a. Tell him you're planning to buy three.
- b. Say, "Let's make it cheap."
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.

Situation 3. You've gone to a different store where the prices are better.

- a. Ask if they have blue blankets.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.

Situation 4. You're David Jones. You're shopping for blue jeans, and you see a style you like.

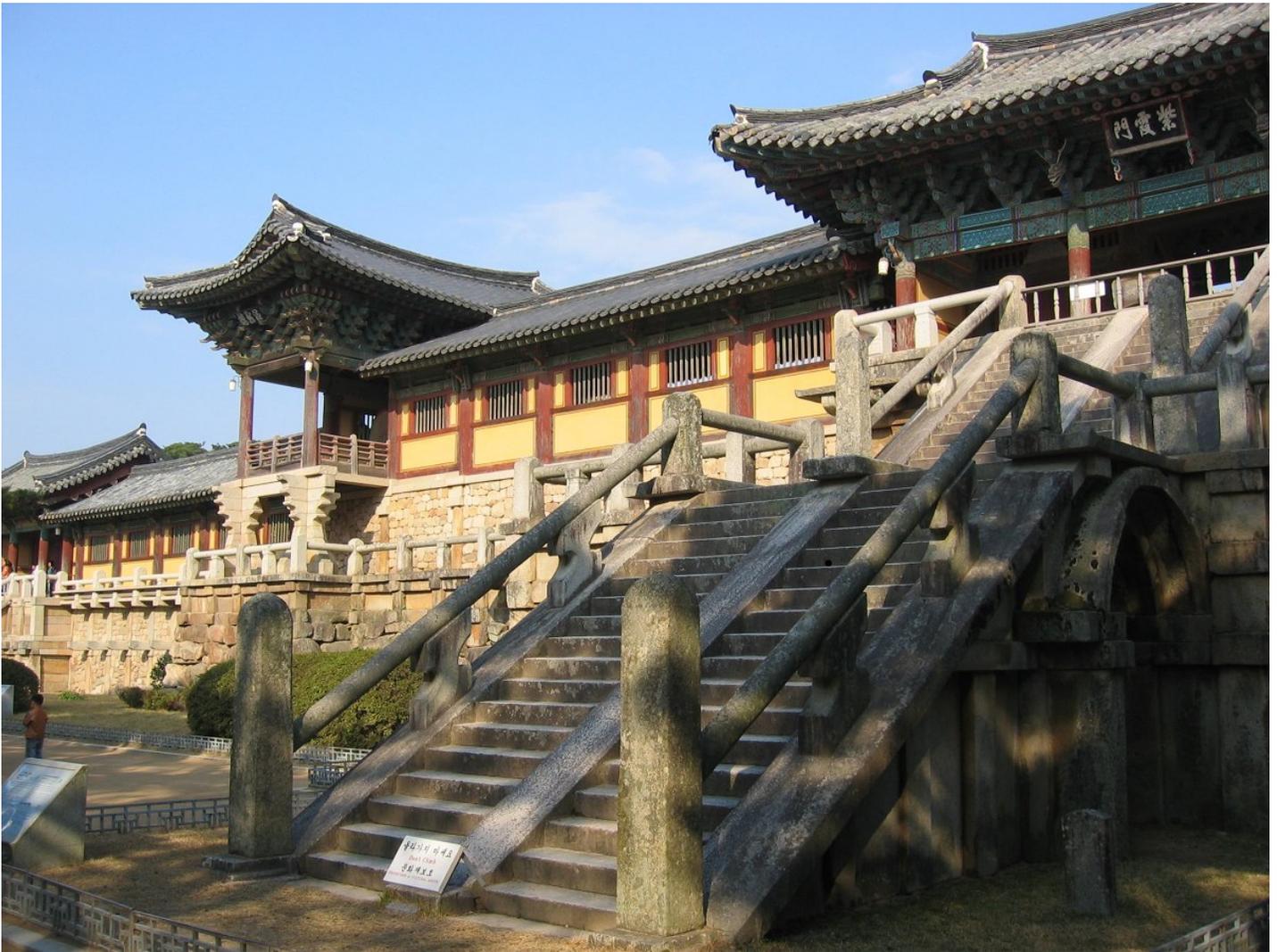
- a. Ask the storekeeper, "How much are these blue jeans?"
- b. Ask him, "Don't you have size 32?"
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. You tried them on. Tell him you're not sure, and that they're too small.

Situation 5. You're in a jewelry store, looking for something to buy as a gift.

- a. Ask the owner to show you rings and necklaces.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. He shows you some jewelry you like, but it costs too much. Tell him it's too expensive.

UNIT 4

TIME AND DATES



The famous Pulguksa Temple at Kyongju.

Photo: eimoberg
Date: 3 Nov 2006
cc-by-2.0

UNIT 4

OBJECTIVES

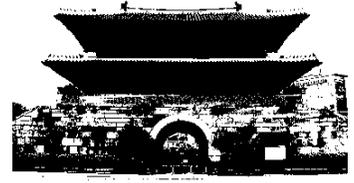


Photo: Gaël Chardon
cc-by-sa-2.0

In this unit you will learn the Korean expressions for time, days, months, and years. An important general rule that you must remember is that the designation of time in Korean proceeds from "larger" to "smaller." For example, 11:30 the 27th day of April, 1979 is expressed in Korean as "1979-April-27th-eleven-thirty."

At the end of Unit 4, you will be able to:

1. Ask or state the time, day of the week, month, day of the month, and year.
2. Understand these expressions when spoken at slow-normal speed, in isolation or in simple sentences.

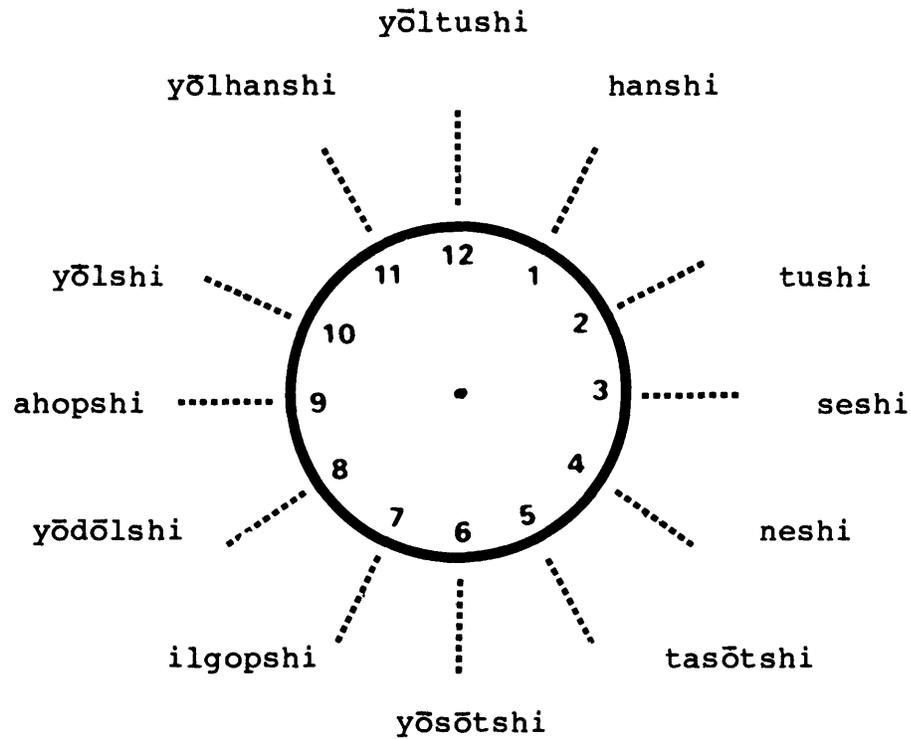


Photo: Joone Hur
Date: 30 Mar 2003
cc-by-sa-2.0

Tripitaka Koreana in the Haeinsa temple, Hapcheon County

UNIT 4, LESSON 1

Exercise 1. Repetition.



NOTE: Remember that the native Korean numbers 1 through 4 lose their last sound when they are placed before a counter.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



ten o'clock

two o'clock

four o'clock

three o'clock

nine o'clock

five o'clock

eight o'clock

eleven o'clock

six o'clock

twelve o'clock

one o'clock

seven o'clock

Exercise 4. Repetition.

chigūm

now

myōtshi

what time

Myōtshimnikka?

What time is it?

Chigūm myōtshimnikka?

What time is it now?

Chigūm hanshimnida.

It's one o'clock now.

NOTE: -imnikka and -imnida drop the first i when they follow -shi.

Exercise 5.

You hear: Chigūm myōtshimnikka? four o'clock

Say: Chigūm neshimnida.

four o'clock

one o'clock

five o'clock

six o'clock

two o'clock

seven o'clock

three o'clock

twelve o'clock

eleven o'clock

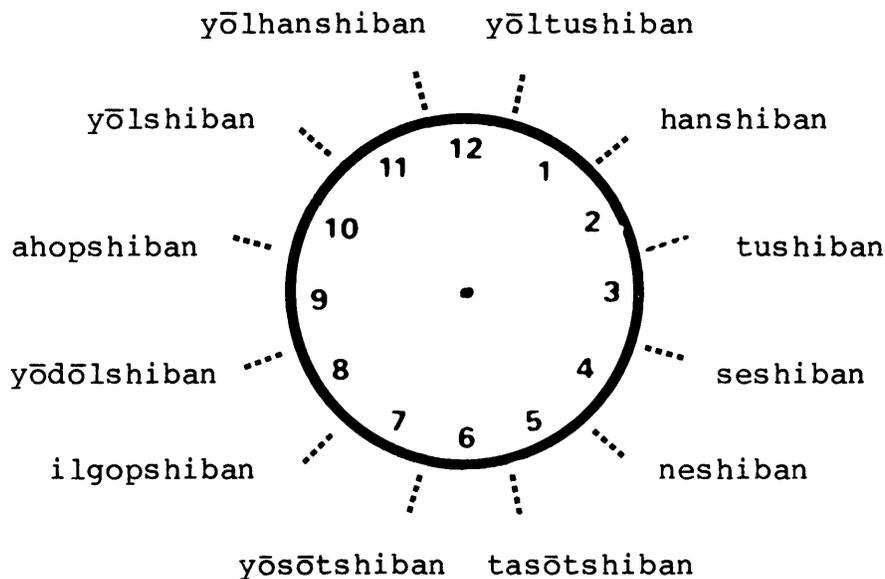
eight o'clock

nine o'clock

ten o'clock

To form the expression for "half-past" an hour, add -ban right after the hour.

Exercise 6. Repetition.



- | | |
|---------------------|-------------|
| Hanshibanimnida. | It's 1:30. |
| Tushibanimnida. | It's 2:30. |
| Yōsōtshibanimnida. | It's 6:30. |
| Yōlshibanimnida. | It's 10:30. |
| Yōlhanshibanimnida. | It's 11:30. |

Exercise 7. Say in Korean.



- | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|
| a. 12:30 | c. 5:30 | e. 1:30 |
| b. 6:30 | d. 10:30 | f. 3:30 |

Exercise 8.

You hear: Chigūm myōtshimnikka? one o'clock

Say: Hanshimnida.

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| a. 11:30 | c. 4:30 | e. twelve o'clock |
| b. eight o'clock | d. six o'clock | f. 1:30 |

Exercise 9. Repetition.

shigan	hour (duration)
myōtshigan	how many hours
kōllimnikka	does it take
Myōtshigan kōllimnikka?	How many hours does it take?
kōllimnida	it takes
Tushigan kōllimnida.	It takes two hours.

NOTE: As you can see, shigan is used when you talk about duration of time; -shi denotes a specific point in time.

Exercise 10.

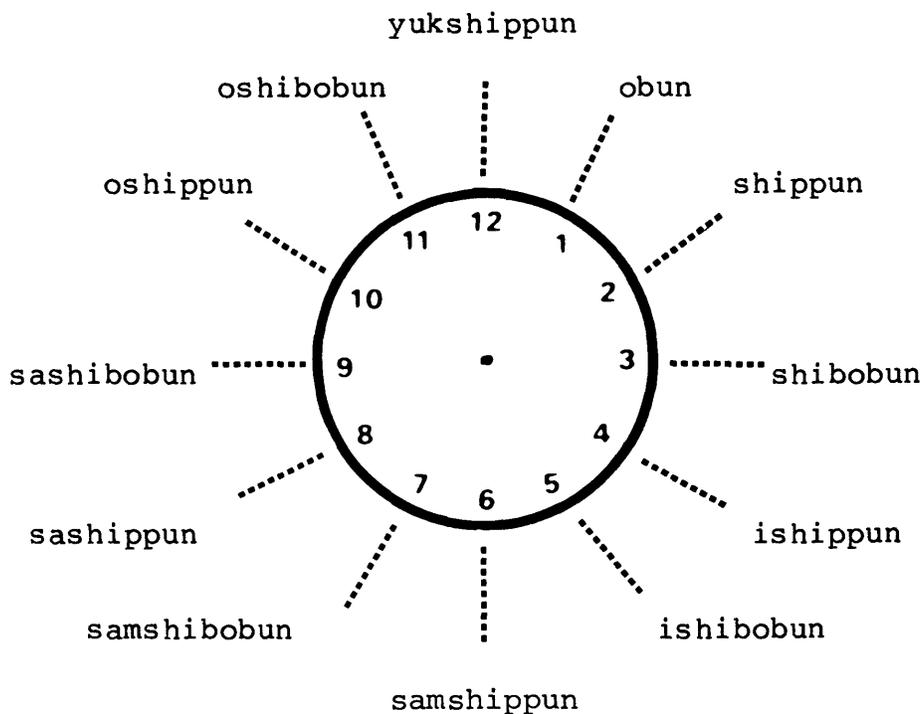
You hear: Myōtshigan kōllimnikka? two hours

Say: Tushigan kōllimnida.

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| a. five hours | c. one hour | e. eight hours |
| b. three hours | d. ten hours | f. seven hours |

Sino-Korean numbers are used for time expressions with minutes, -pun.

Exercise 11. Repetition.

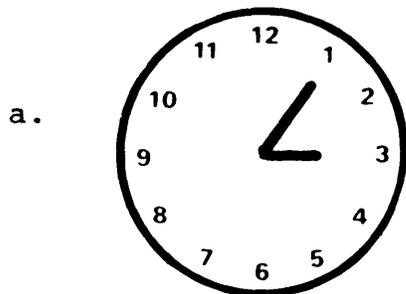


NOTE: -pun is pronounced -bun after o.

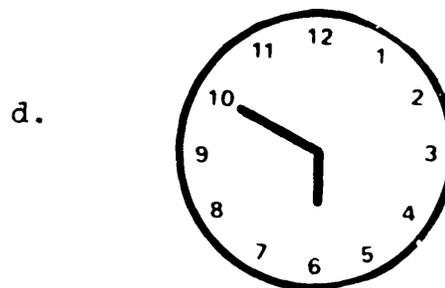
The hour phrase must precede the minute phrase.

Exercise 12.

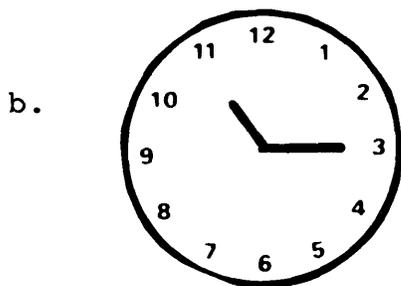
seshi obun



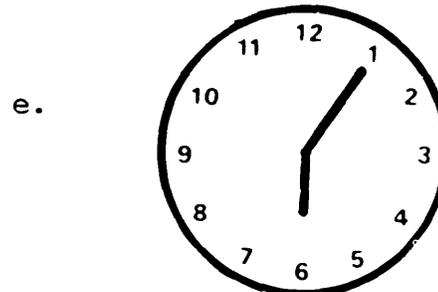
tasōtshi oshippun



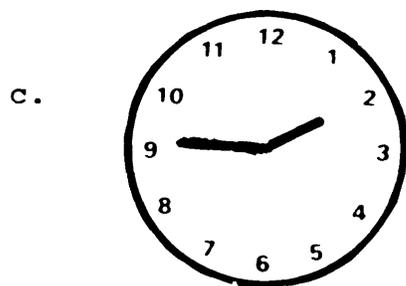
yōlhanshi shiboun



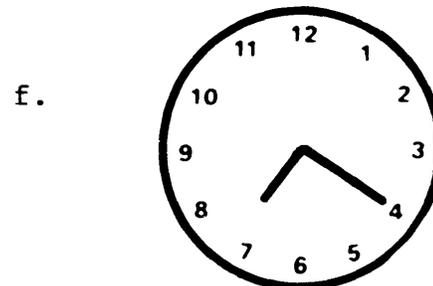
yōsōtshi obun



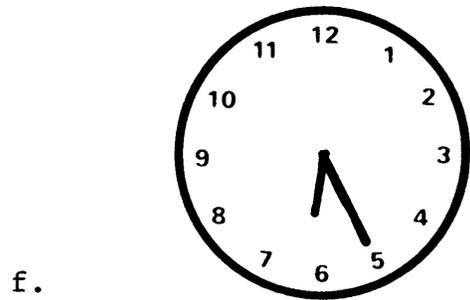
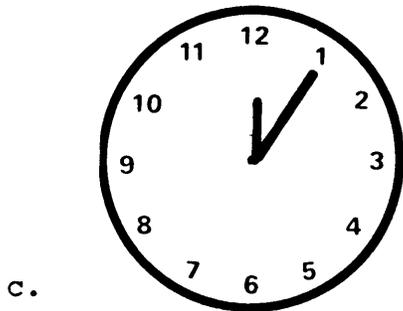
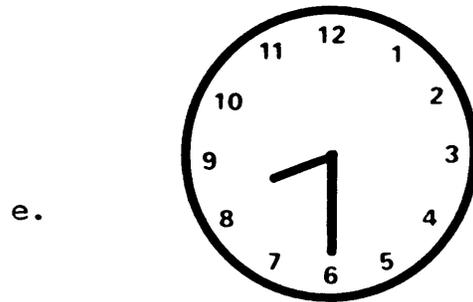
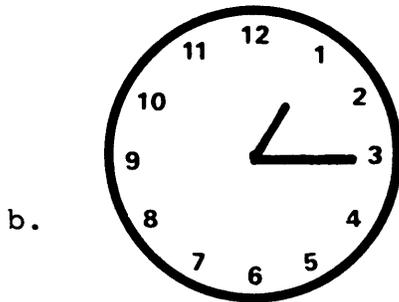
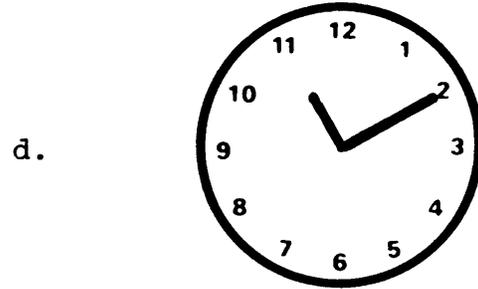
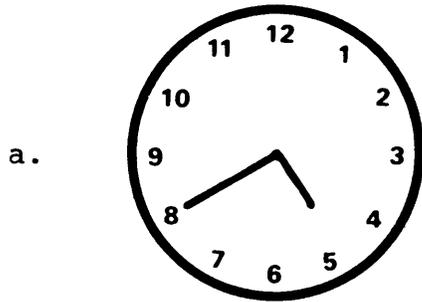
hanshi sashibobun



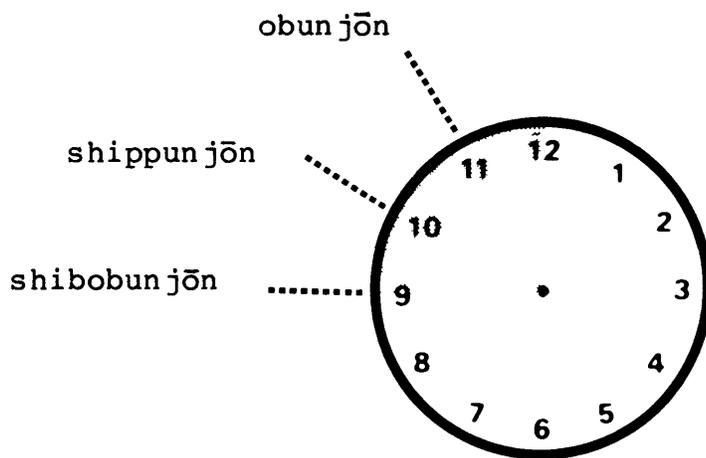
ilgopshi ishippun



Exercise 13. Say in Korean.



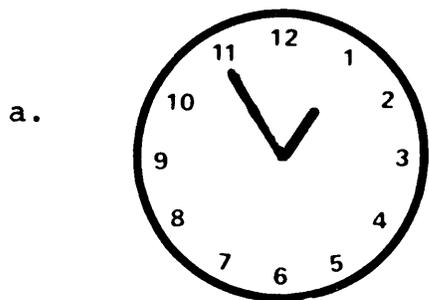
Exercise 14. Repetition.



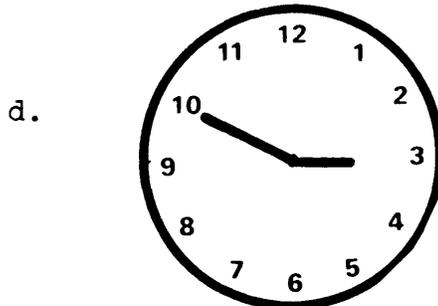
NOTE: -jōn means "before."

Exercise 15.

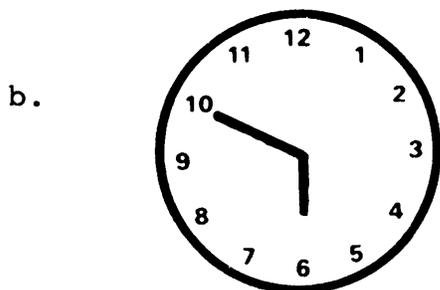
hanshi obunjōn



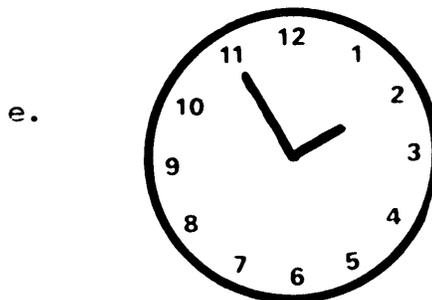
seshi shippunjōn



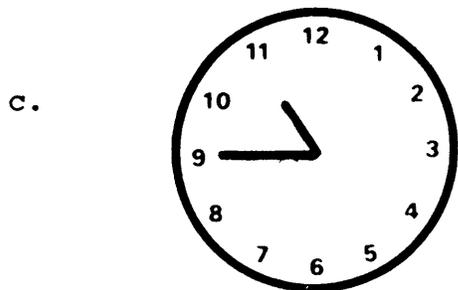
yōsōtshi shippunjōn



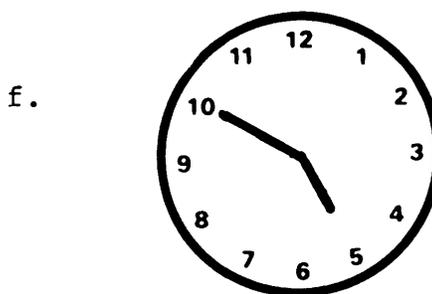
tushi obunjōn



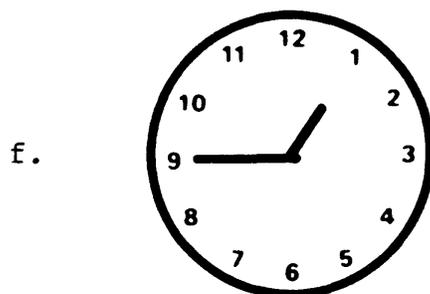
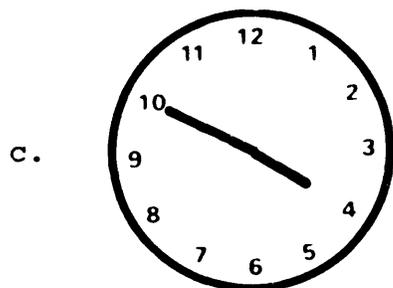
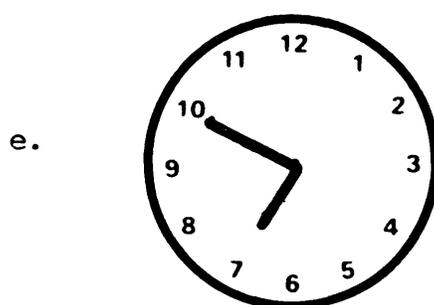
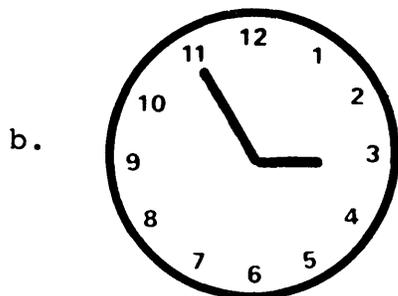
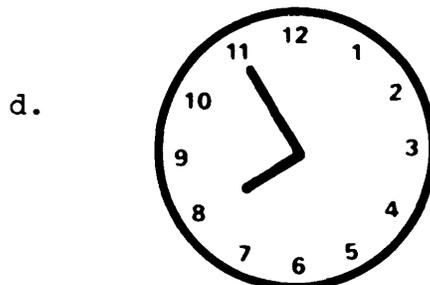
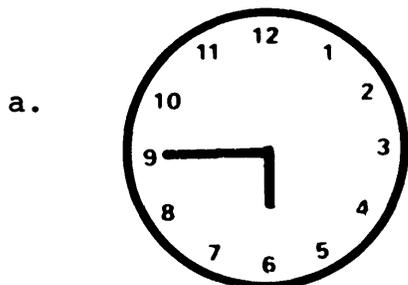
yōlhanshi shibobunjōn



tasōtshi shippunjōn



Exercise 16. Say in Korean, using -jōnimnida.



Exercise 17. Say in English.



Exercise 18. Repetition.

oj̄on	morning, a.m.
oj̄on ahopshi	9 a.m.
ohu	afternoon, p.m.
ohu tushi	2 p.m.
oj̄one	in the morning
ohue	in the afternoon
oj̄on ilgopshie	at 7 a.m.
ohu seshie	at 3 p.m.
Oj̄one oshipshio.	Please come in the morning.
Oj̄on ȳolshie oshipshio.	Please come at 10 a.m.
Ohue kashipshio.	Please go in the afternoon.
Ohu tas̄otshie kages̄s̄umnida.	I will go at 5 p.m.

NOTE: -e here means "in", "at." It is added to the last time reference mentioned.

Exercise 19. Say in English.



Exercise 20. Say in Korean.



Please come in the morning.
 I'll go tomorrow afternoon.
 I'm not busy in the afternoon.
 It's still morning.

UNIT 4, LESSON 2

Exercise 1. Repetition.

yoil	day of the week
iryoil	Sunday
wōryoil	Monday
hwayoil	Tuesday
suyoil	Wednesday
mogyoil	Thursday
kūmyoil	Friday
t'oyoil	Saturday

NOTE: "Friday" is sometimes pronounced kūmnyoil.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Repetition.

musūn yoil	what day of the week
Musūn yoirimnikka?	What day of the week is it?
onūl	today
Onūl musūn yoirimnikka?	What day of the week is it today?
Suyoirimnida.	It's Wednesday.

NOTE: Yoil is pronounced yoir- when a vowel follows it.

Exercise 4.

You hear: Musūn yoirimnikka? Wednesday

Say: Onūl suyoirimnida.

Tuesday

Saturday

Friday

Sunday

Thursday

Monday

The months are made up of Sino-Korean numbers followed by the suffix -wōl, "month."

Exercise 5. Repetition.

-wōl	month
irwōl	January
iwōl	February
samwōl	March
sawōl	April
owōl	May
yuwōl	June
ch'irwōl	July
pa'rwōl	August
kuwōl	September
shiwōl	October
shibirwōl	November
shibiwōl	December

NOTE: il is pronounced ir- when -wōl follows it. The same sound change occurs with ch'il, p'al and shibil.

The k in yuk is dropped when -wōl follows it. However, this does not always happen in younger people's speech. Therefore, yugwōl may also be heard.

The p in ship is dropped when -wōl follows. However, shib-wōl is also used among younger people.

Exercise 6. Say in English.



Exercise 7. Repetition.

ōnje	when
oshyōssūmnikka	did you come
ōnje oshyōssūmnikka?	When did you come?
sawōre	in April
wassūmnida	I came
Sawōre wassūmnida.	I came in April.

NOTE: Oshyōssūmnikka is used to ask about someone else, but wassūmnida is used to talk about yourself.

-e means "in." -wōl is pronounced -wōr when -e follows it.

Exercise 8.

<p>You hear: Ōnje oshyōssūmnikka? August</p> <p>Say: P'arwōre wassūmnida.</p>

July

June

December

October

January

November

August

Exercise 9. Repetition.

iril	the first day
iil	the second
samil	the third
sail	the fourth
oil	the fifth
yugil	the sixth
ch'iril	the seventh
p'aril	the eighth
kuil	the ninth
shibil	the tenth
shibiril	the eleventh
shibiil	the twelfth
shipsamil	the thirteenth
shipsail	the fourteenth
shiboil	the fifteenth

NOTE: il, "one," is pronounced ir- when il follows it. The same happens to "the eleventh"; it becomes shibiril.

Ch'il is pronounced ch'ir- when il follows. The same change happens to p'al; it is pronounced par-.

Remember that ship is pronounced shib- when i, o or y follow.

Exercise 10. Say in English.



Exercise 11. Repetition.

irwōl shibil	January 10
irwōl shibiil	January 12
iwōl iril	February 1
iwōl iil	February 2
samwōl shibil	March 10
sawōl p'aril	April 8
owōl ch'iril	May 7
yuwōl yugil	June 6
shiwōl shibil	October 10
shibirwōl shiboil	November 15
shibiwōl shipsail	December 14

Exercise 12. Say in English.



Exercise 13. Repetition.

shimnyugil	the sixteenth
shipch'iril	the seventeenth
shipp'aril	the eighteenth
shipkuil	the nineteenth
ishibil	the twentieth
ishibiril	the twenty-first
ishibiil	the twenty-second
ishipsamil	the twenty-third
ishipsail	the twenty-fourth
ishiboil	the twenty-fifth
ishimnyugil	the twenty-sixth
ishipch'iril	the twenty-seventh
ishipp'aril	the twenty-eighth
ishipkuil	the twenty-ninth
samshibil	the thirtieth
samshibiril	the thirty-first

Exercise 14. Say in English.



Exercise 15. Repetition.

kuwōl shimnyugil	September 16
owōl shipp'aril	May 18
p'arwōl ishibil	August 20
shiwōl kuil	October 9

shibirwōl samshibil	November 30
shibiwōl ishipch'iril	December 27
yuwōl ishipsamil	June 23
ch'irwōl samshibiril	July 31

Exercise 16. Say in English.



Exercise 17. Repetition.

myōch'il	what date
Myōch'irimnikka?	What's the date?
Onūl myōch'irimnikka?	What's the date today?
Kuirimnida.	It's the ninth.
Onūl iwōl shipsairimnida.	Today is February 14.
Onūl yuwōl ishipp'aririmnida.	Today is June 28.

Exercise 18.



<p>You hear: Ōnūl myōch'irimnikka? March 20</p> <p>Say: Ōnūl samwōl ishibirimnida.</p>
--

June 15

October 6

May 13

March 19

February 20

UNIT 4, LESSON 3

Years are expressed using Sino-Korean numbers followed by -nyōn, "year." They are never read as two separate numbers as in English. For example, shipku-ch'ilshipku, 19-79, is incorrect.

Exercise 1. Repetition.

ch'ōngubaek p'alshipsanyōn	1984
ch'ōngubaek ch'ilshipsamnyōn	1973
ch'ōngubaek oshipp'alnyōn	1958
ch'ōngubaek yukshipkunyōn	1969
ch'ōnp'albaek yukshibilnyōn	1861
ch'ōnch'ilbaek ch'ilshimnyungnyōn	1776

NOTE: Ku, "nine," is pronounced gu when it follows ch'ōn.

In 1776, the k in yuk is pronounced ng due to the following n in -nyōn.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



1965

1963

1984

1979

1957

Often, only the last two digits of a year are used; you may do so as long as you refer specifically to this century. Also, when a date is used with the year, the year comes first.

Exercise 4. Repetition.

p'alshipsamnyōn	'83
ch'ilshimnyungnyōn	'76
yukshipsanyōn	'64
oshipch'ilnyōn	'57
yukshibonyōn	'65
ch'ōngubaek yukshipsanyōn kuwōl ch'iril	September 7, 1964
ch'ōngubaek ch'ilshipkunyōn sawōl shipsail	April 14, 1979
p'alshipsamnyōn iwōl yugil	February 6, '83
yukshipch'ilnyōn owōl ishipkuil	May 29, '67

Exercise 5. Say in English.



Exercise 6. Say in Korean.



April 6, '65

June 10, '64

September 27, '77

October 4, '84

January 13, '81

Exercise 7. Repetition.

Ōnje oshyōssūmnikka?

hanguge

Ōnje hanguge oshyōssūmnikka?

changnyōn

Changnyōne yōgi wassūmnida.

kūmnyōn

Kūmnyōne hanguge wassūmnida.

naenyōn

Naenyōne kagessūmnida.

miguge

Naenyōne miguge kagessūmnida.

When did you come?

to Korea, in Korea

When did you come to Korea?

last year

I came here last year.

this year

I came to Korea this year.

next year

I'm going to go next year.

to the United States

I'm going to go to America
next year.

NOTE: Hanguk is pronounced hangug- when e follows, and miguk changes to migug- before -e.

-e means "to" when you talk about coming and going. Remember, however, that -e is also used with time references. Here it's added to "last year" and "next year" to show that something happens "at" a certain time or "in" a certain year.

Exercise 8. Say in English.



Exercise 9. Say in Korean. 

I came in 1984.

When did you come to Korea?

I'm going to go to America next year.

I came to Korea this year.

When did you come here?

Exercise 10. Repetition.

saengil

birthday

Saengil ōnjemnikka?

When is your birthday?

che saengil

my birthday

Che saengil iwōl samir-
imnida.

My birthday is February 3.

Saengil yukshipsamnyōn
owōl shipsairimnida.

My birthday is May 14, '63.

NOTE: -imnikka often drops i when it follows words which end in vowel sounds such as e, a, i, o and u.

Che, "my," may be omitted when you say "my birthday."

Exercise 11. Say in English. 

Exercise 12. Say in Korean.



Please come at 1:30 p.m.

How many hours does it take?

It takes four hours.

I'll go at 4:00 tomorrow.

Today is March 23rd.

My birthday is July 9, '63.



7th century Cheomseongdae astronomical observatory in Gyeongju

Photo:Zsinj
Date: 27 Apr 2007 or 2008
cc-by-sa-3.0

UNIT 4

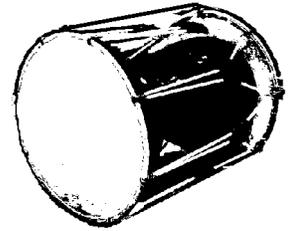
SELF-EVALUATION QUIZ

Photo: Visviva
Public Domain

Situation 1. You're David Jones. PFC Pak comes up to you at work to tell you about an appointment he has scheduled.

- a. ON TAPE ONLY.
- b. Tell him it's 8:30 now.
- c. He tells you he has an appointment at 10:00. Ask him how many hours it will take.
- d. ON TAPE ONLY.
- e. Tell him, "Well then, please go at a quarter to 10."

Situation 2. PFC Pak is filling out some paperwork. He doesn't have a calendar, so he asks you some questions.

- a. ON TAPE ONLY.
- b. Tell him today is Thursday.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. Tell him today is the 25th.
- e. ON TAPE ONLY.
- f. Tell him you came to Korea on the 19th of October.

Situation 3. You're Mike Williams, and you're talking to Mr. Kim.

- a. ON TAPE ONLY.
- b. Tell him, "No. I came in March of this year."
- c. He asks when you'll go back to the United States. Tell him you'll go in February of next year.
- d. Ask Mr. Kim if he's busy this afternoon.
- e. ON TAPE ONLY.
- f. Tell him, "Today's my birthday."

UNIT 5

EVERYDAY CONVERSATION



Toksu Palace in downtown Seoul.

Photo: <http://2007/Thierry>
Date: 10 Jul 2004
cc-by-2.0

UNIT 5

OBJECTIVES

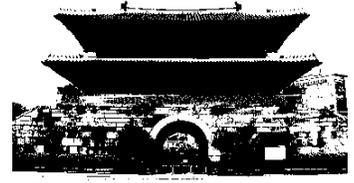


Photo: Gaël Chardon
cc-by-sa-2.0

At the end of Unit 5, you will be able to:

1. Tell where you're from and what your hometown is, and ask someone else for the same information.
2. Describe your family and ask about another's.
3. Ask someone what they're doing at a certain time.
4. Suggest a social activity and a time to meet.
5. Respond to questions about whether you like something.
6. Give instructions to "personal hire" employees (houseboys or housegirls) regarding laundry, ironing or mending you might like done.
7. Ask someone not to do something.
8. Use the Korean words for certain uniform items.
9. Express the idea that you have to do something.
10. Thank someone for their work.

UNIT 5, LESSON 1

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- MAJ Pak: Harris taewinim, ōnje hanguge oshyōssūmnikka? CPT Harris, when did you come to Korea?
- Jim Harris: Kūmnyōn owōre wassūmnida. I came in May of this year.
- MAJ Pak: Ne. Ōdisō oshyōssūmnikka? I see. Where did you come from?
- Jim Harris: Detroitesō wassūmnida. I came from Detroit.
- MAJ Pak: A, kūrōssūmnikka? Kohyangi Detroitimnikka? Oh, is that so? Is your hometown Detroit?
- Jim Harris: Ne. Detroit che kohyangimnida. Yes. Detroit is my hometown.
- MAJ Pak: Shillejiman, kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka? Excuse me, but are you married?
- Jim Harris: Ne. Onyōnjōne haessūmnida. Yes. I got married five years ago.
- MAJ Pak: Puindo hanguge oshyōssūmnikka? Did your wife come to Korea too?
- Jim Harris: Mullon kach'i wassūmnida. Of course she came along.
- MAJ Pak: Aidūldo issūmnikka? Do you have children too?
- Jim Harris: Ne. Adūl hana ttal hana issūmnida. Yes. I have a son and a daughter.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Remember that oshyōssūmnikka is used to ask about another person, while wassūmnida is used to speak about yourself. Wassūmnida is also appropriate when you talk about your spouse.

Ōdi means "where" and -esō means "from" when you talk about going and coming. It is shortened to -sō when it follows words ending in a vowel sound, as in ōdisō, "from where."

Kohyangi is kohyang, "hometown," and -i, indicating that kohyang is the subject.

Remember, although Kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka? literally means "Did you get married?" it also means "Are you married?"

Onyōn means "five years" and -jōne means "before" or "ago."

Haessūmnida, "I did," is often used to answer a question that includes hashyōssūmnikka. You do not have to repeat the entire verb. For example, you can answer the question Kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka? simply by saying, Ne. Haessūmnida.

Puindo is puin, "wife," and -do, "too" or "also." Puin is used to refer to the wife of a man who is your equal or to address a married female. However, puin is never used for your own wife.

Kach'i means "together" or "along."

Aidūl is ai-, "child," and -dūl, which makes it the plural. This plural suffix is not always used. -do is "too," so aidūldo is "children too."

Adūl is "son" and ttal is "daughter."

EXERCISES

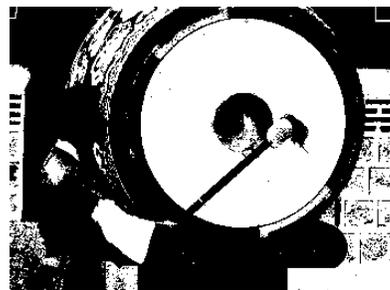


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Changnyōne hanguge oshyōssūmnikka?

Did you come to Korea last year?

Kūmnyōn sawōre wassūmnida.

I came in April of this year.

Inyōnjōne hanguge wassūmnida.

I came to Korea two years ago.

San Francisco-esō wassūmnida.

I came from San Francisco.

Kohyang New Yorkimnikka?

Is New York your hometown?

Washington che kohyangimnida.

Washington is my hometown.

Shillejiman, ōnje kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?

Excuse me, but when did you get married?

Samnyōnjōne kyōlhon haessūmnida.

I got married three years ago.

Puindo hanguge kyeshimnikka?

Is your wife also in Korea?

Puindo kach'i hanguge oshyōssūmnikka?

Did your wife come to Korea with you?

Aidūl ōdi issūmnikka?

Where are your children?

Adūlhago ttal an wassūmnida.

My son and daughter did not come.

Exercise 2. Say in English



REMEMBER

When talking about
others, use:

oshyōssūmnikka
hasyōssūmnikka
kyeshimnikka

When talking about
self/spouse/children,
use:

wassūmnida
haessūmnida
issūmnida

Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



I came from San Francisco.

Washington is my hometown.

I got married four years ago.

My son and daughter also came along.

My children are in the United States.

Exercise 4. Role Play.



- a. Say that you came last year.
- b. Say that you came from Philadelphia.
- c. Say that your hometown is Chicago.
- d. Say that you got married seven years ago.
- e. Say "of course she did."

Exercise 5. Repetition.

uri	we, our, my
uri ttal	our/my daughter
uri adūl	our/my son
Uri adūlhago ttaldo hanguge issūmnida.	My son and daughter are also in Korea.
uri hanguk	our Korea, our country
Uri hanguge ōnje oshyōssūmnikka?	When did you come to our country?
pumonim	parents
uri pumonim	my parents
Uri pumonim miguge kyeshimnida.	My parents are in the United States.
Kim sōnsaengnim pumonim	Mr. Kim's parents
Kim sōnsaengnim, pumonim ōdi kyeshimnikka?	Where are your parents, Mr. Kim?
chip	house, home
uri chip	my home, my house
Uri chibe oshipshio.	Please come to my house.

NOTES: Uri normally means "we" or "our." However, Koreans often use this word as "my," instead of using che.

Pumonim can be used for your own parents as well as others'.

Chip is pronounced chib- when an -e follows it. Chibe means either "to the house" or "at home" depending on the verb in the sentence. Chibe issūmnida means "[I] am at home." "My house" is almost always referred to as uri chip, rarely as che chip.

Exercise 6. Say in English.



Exercise 7. Say in Korean.

Where are your parents?

Where are your children?

Is your wife in Korea?

My children are in the United States.

Please come to my house.

Exercise 8. Repetition.

chipsaram

wife (one's own wife)

Uri chipsaram yōgi issūmnida.

My wife is here.

namp'yōn

husband (one's own husband)

Uri namp'yōn kuninimnida.

My husband is in the military.

miguksaram

American (person)

Uri chipsaram miguksaramimnida.

My wife is an American.

migukkunin

American service member

Uri namp'yōn migukkuninimnida.

My husband is an American service member.

samonim

wife (someone else's wife)

Kim sōnsaengnim samonim

Mr. Kim's wife

Pak sōnsaengnim samonim yosae
pappūshimnikka?

Is Mrs. Pak busy these days?

NOTE: Chipsaram is the humble way of referring to one's own wife, literally meaning "home person."

Samonim is a title for the wife of a man you must show respect to, such as your superior or an older man. Since a Korean woman keeps her maiden name, Mr. Kim's wife is not called Kim samonim; she is either addressed simply as samonim or as Kim sōnsaengnim samonim, "Mr. Kim's wife."

Exercise 9. Say in English.



Exercise 10. Say in Korean.



My husband came here last year.

My wife is in Korea too.

Mr. Kim is here.

My husband is an NCO.

My wife is an American.

Unlike kyeshimnida and issūmnida, some verbs are made honorific or respectful by adding -shi.

The honorific forms should be used when talking to or about other adults.

The plainer, non-honorific forms are used for yourself, for your spouse, and for children.

Other Adults	Self/Spouse/Children
<u>Honorific</u>	<u>Non-Honorific</u>
chinaeshimnikka	chinaemnida
pappūshimnikka	pappūmnida
-ishimnikka	-imnida
ch'ajūshimnikka	ch'atsūmnida
oshyōssūmnikka	wassūmnida
hashyōssūmnikka	haessūmnida

Exercise 11. Repetition.

Uri pumonim chal chinaeshimnida.

My parents are getting along fine.

Uri namp'yōn chal chinaemnida.

My husband is getting along fine.

Pak soryōngnim, pappūshimnikka?

MAJ Pak, are you busy?

Uri chipsaram yosae pappūmnida.

My wife is busy these days.

Kim sōnsaengnim, kuninishimnikka?

Mr. Kim, are you in the military?

Chōnūn minganinimnida.

I am a civilian.

Exercise 12. Say in Korean. 

My wife came last year.

My parents are in the United States.

Mrs. Kim, are you busy?

When did you come here?

My husband isn't busy these days.

Exercise 13.

You hear: Chipsaram wassūmnida.

Say: Chipsaramdo wassūmnida.

Exercise 14.

You hear: eight years ago

Say: P'alnyōnjōne kyōlhon haessūmnida.

four years ago

six years ago

nine years ago

12 years ago

seven years ago

Exercise 15.

You hear: Mr. Kim

Say: Kim sōnsaengnimdo kach'i kagessūmnida.

my wife

my son

my daughter

my parents

MAJ Parker's wife

REVIEW

As you have seen so far, the Korean word order is more flexible than English. However, in some other cases, certain words have a fixed place in a sentence. For example, a number phrase has to follow the noun. Also, an comes immediately before the verb. With most verbs involving ha-, "to do," an is used immediately before the ha-.

KOREAN WORD ORDER IS FLEXIBLE:

Kūmnyōne hanguge wassūmnida. Hanguge kūmnyōne wassūmnida.	I came to Korea this year.
Puindo hanguge oshyōssūmnikka? Hanguge puindo oshyōssūmnikka?	Did your wife also come to Korea?
Tambae yōgi issūmnida. Yōgi tambae issūmnida.	The cigarettes are here.

EXCEPTIONS EXIST:

ALWAYS: Sagwa hangae chushipshio. NEVER: Hangae sagwa chushipshio.	Give me an apple.
ALWAYS: Hanguge an wassūmnida. NEVER: An hanguge wassūmnida.	[He/she/they] did not come to Korea.
ALWAYS: Kyōlhon an haessūmnida. NEVER: An kyōlhon haessūmnida.	[He/she/they] are not married.
ALWAYS: Pogi an chossūmnida. NEVER: An pogi chossūmnida.	It doesn't look good.

Exercise 16.

You hear: a son and a daughter

Say: Adūl hana ttal hana issūmnida.

a son and two daughters

two sons and two daughters

three sons and a daughter

a son and three daughters

two sons and a daughter

Exercise 17. Role Play.



- a. Say that you are married.
- b. Say that you have a son.
- c. Say that they certainly did.
- d. Say that they are in the United States.
- e. Say that your wife is a civilian.

Exercise 18. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Changdeokgung Palace gate, Seoul

Photo: Karl Baron
Date: 3 May 2008
cc-by-2.0

MAJ Pak: Harris taewinim, ōnje hanguge oshyōssōyo?

Jim Harris: Kūmnyōn owōre wassōyo.

MAJ Pak: Ne. Ōdisō oshyōssōyo?

Jim Harris: Detroitesō wassōyo.

MAJ Pak: A, kūrōseyo? Kohyangi Detroityeyo?

Jim Harris: Ne. Detroit che kohyangyeyo.

MAJ Pak: Shillejiman kyōlhon hashyōssōyo?

Jim Harris: Ne. Onyōnjōne haessōyo.

MAJ Pak: Puindo hanguge oshyōssōyo?

Jim Harris: Mullon kach'i wassōyo.

MAJ Pak: Aidūldo issōyo?

Jim Harris: Ne. Adūl hana ttal hana issōyo.



Buddhist flagpole supports of Geumsansa Temple

Photo: Steve46814
Date: 26 Oct 2007
cc-by-sa-3.0

UNIT 5, LESSON 2

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- MAJ Pak: Harris taewinim, onūl chōnyōge mwō hashimnikka? Captain Harris, what are you doing this evening?
- Jim Harris: Pyōllo halil ōpsūmnida. Waeyo? I don't have anything special to do. Why?
- MAJ Pak: Chōnyōk kach'i hapshida. Let's have dinner together.
- Jim Harris: Chossūmnida. Myōtshieyo? Great! What time?
- MAJ Pak: Yōsōtshie mannaphshida. Let's meet at six o'clock.
- Jim Harris: Arassūmnida. All right.
- * * *
- MAJ Pak: Harris taewinim, musūn ūmshik choahashimnikka? Captain Harris, what kind of food do you like?
- Jim Harris: Hanguk ūmshik choahamnida. Pulgogihago kalbi aju choahamnida. I like Korean food. I like pulgogi and kalbi very much.
- MAJ Pak: A, kūrōssūmnikka? Kimch'ido choahashimnikka? Oh, is that so? Do you like kimchi too?
- Jim Harris: Mullonimnida. Aju mashi issūmnida. Of course. It's delicious.
- MAJ Pak: Kūrōm, hanguk ūmshikchōme kapshida. Well then, let's go to a Korean restaurant.
- Jim Harris: Chossūmnida. Kūrōpshida. Fine. Let's do that.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Chōnyōge is chōnyōk, "evening," and -e "in." The k is pronounced g due to the following -e. Chōnyōk also means "supper" or "dinner," depending on the context.

Hashimnikka means "are you doing" or "is he/she doing."

Halil means "work to do" or "things to do."

Hapshida literally means "let's do." It is used with the names of foods and meals to mean "let's have" or "let's eat."

Chossūmnida means "Great," "That's good," "That's fine" or "OK."

Myōtshieyo? means "At what time?" -yo is required in polite speech when a word or phrase is used by itself without a sentence ending. Myōtshie? is not a polite way to ask "What time?" A -yo must be added: Myōtshieyo?

Mannapshida means "let's meet."

Arassūmnida literally means "I have understood." It is used as an alternative to algessūmnida.

Ūmshik specifically refers to cooked "dishes," rather than "groceries."

Choahamnida means "I like it," as opposed to Chossūmnida, "It is good."

Pulgogi is a Korean dish of marinated and barbecued beef, and kalbi, literally "rib," normally refers to barbecued ribs, which are also marinated.

Kimch'i is a Korean pickled vegetable, usually hot and spicy, and -do means "also" or "too."

Mashi issūmnida literally means "It has taste."

Ūmshikchōm means "restaurant" and -e means "to." When -e is used with a verb of going or coming, it indicates a destination.

Ka- means "to go" and -pshida, "let's." So Kapshida means "Let's go."

Kūrōpshida is used to agree with a suggestion. It means "Let's do that" or "Let's do so."

EXERCISES

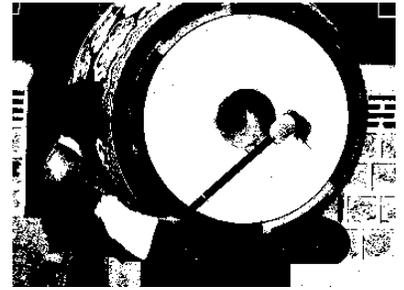


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Onūl ohue mwō hashimnikka?

What are you doing this afternoon?

Pyōllo an pappūmnida. Waeyo?

I am not really busy. Why?

K'ōp'i kach'i hapshida.

Let's have coffee together.

Taūm wōryoil ohu neshie mannaphida.

Let's meet at 4:00 p.m. next Monday.

Mwō choahashimnikka?

What do you like?

Hanguk ūmshik choahashimnikka?

Do you like Korean food?

Kimch'i aju choahamnida.

I like kimchi very much.

Onūl ohue hanguk ūmshikchōme kapshida.

Let's go to a Korean restaurant this afternoon.

Naeil shigan issūmnikka?

Do you have time tomorrow?

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



What are you doing tomorrow morning?

Do you like American cigarettes?

Let's go to a Korean restaurant today.

Yes. Let's go. What time?

Let's meet at 4:00 p.m.

I don't have anything special to do.

Exercise 4. Role Play.



- a. Say that you're not particularly busy.
- b. Say that your wife is getting along fine.
- c. Say that you don't have anything special to do and ask why.
- d. Agree with the suggestion.
- e. Thank him for the invitation.
- f. Say that you understand and that she'll go with you.

Exercise 5. Repetition.

chumare	(during) the weekend
ibon chumare	(during) this weekend
Ibōn chumare pyōllo halil ōpsūmnida.	This weekend I don't have anything special to do.
taūm chumare	next weekend
Taūm chumare chōnyōk kach'i hapshida.	Let's have dinner together next weekend.
kūkchang	theater, movie theater
Kūkchange kapshida.	Let's go to a theater.
Taūm chumare kūkchange kapshida.	Let's go to a theater next weekend.
Taūm t'oyoire kūkchange kap- shida.	Let's go to a theater next Saturday.
kugyōng	watching, sightseeing
Kugyōng kapshida.	Let's go sightseeing.
kūkchang kugyōng	watch a movie
Naeil kūkchang kugyōng kapshida.	Let's go see a movie tomorrow.
Kūkchang kugyōng choahashimnikka?	Do you like movies?
Mashi chossūmnida.	It tastes good.
Pulgogi mashi chossūmnida.	The pulgogi tastes good.
Kalbi aju mashi chossūmnida.	The kalbi tastes very good.
K'ōp'i pyōllo mashi an choss- ūmnida.	The coffee doesn't taste particularly good.

NOTE: Kugyōng is a general word for watching some form of entertainment or for sightseeing.

Exercise 6. Say in English.



Exercise 7.



You hear: Mashi chossūmnida.

Say: Mashi an chossūmnida.

Exercise 8. Say in Korean.



What are you doing this weekend?

Well then, let's go to a movie tomorrow.

I'm not busy next weekend.

This kimchi doesn't taste very good.

My wife also likes Korean food.

Exercise 9. Repetition.

Seoul	capital of South Korea
Seoul kugyōng	sightseeing in Seoul
Seoul kugyōng kapshida.	Let's go sightseeing in Seoul.
shinae	downtown
Seoul shinae	downtown Seoul
Seoul shinae kugyōng	sightseeing in downtown Seoul
Onūl chōnyōge Seoul shinae kugyōng kapshida.	Let's go sightseeing in downtown Seoul tonight.
kashimnikka	are you going
Kūkchange kashimnikka?	Are you going to the theater?
Ōdi kashimnikka?	Where are you going?
kamnida	I am going
Chibe kamnida.	I am going home.
Miguge kamnida.	I am going to the United States.

NOTE: Shinae literally means "in town" and is used to refer to a downtown area.

When you say you are going or coming home, che or uri, "my," is normally omitted.

Exercise 10. Say in English.



Exercise 11. Listening Comprehension.

- a. What are they going to do?
- b. Where is he going tomorrow?
- c. What is he doing this weekend?
- d. Where are they going for dinner?
- e. When is he going to visit?

Exercise 12. Say in Korean.



What are you doing next weekend?

Well then, let's go to a theater this evening.

Where are you going?

Let's go sightseeing in downtown Seoul.

When are you going to the United States?

Exercise 13.

You hear: tomorrow evening

Say: Naeil chōnyōge mwō hashimnikka?

this evening

next weekend

tomorrow afternoon

this weekend

next Saturday

Exercise 14.

You hear: Hanguk ūmshik choahashimnikka? yes, very much

Say: Ne. Hanguk ūmshikaju choahamnida.

yes, next year

yes, very much

yes, lots

yes, a little

Exercise 15.

You hear: going sightseeing in Seoul

Say: Seoul kugyōng kashimnikka?

going to the theater

like Korean food

going home

taste good

busy next weekend

Exercise 16.

You hear: meet next Saturday

Say: Taūm t'oyoire mannaphida.

go to a movie Sunday

have dinner together

meet next weekend

go sightseeing this weekend

meet Friday evening

Exercise 17. Role Play.

- a. Respond to his greeting. Then ask how he's getting along.
- b. Introduce your wife to Mr. Kim.
- c. Say that you are not busy.
- d. Thank him for invitation.
- e. Say that your wife also likes Korean food.

Exercise 18. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Photo: Steve46814
Date: 18 Oct 2007
cc-by-sa-3.0

Ceramic jars used to store Kimche, Dohwa-ri House

MAJ Pak: Harris taewinim, onūl chōnyōge mwō haseyo?

Jim Harris: Pyōllo halil ōpsōyo. Waeyo?

MAJ Pak: Chōnyōk kach'i hapshida.

Jim Harris: Chōssūmnida. Myōtshieyo?

MAJ Pak: Yōsōtshie mannapshida.

* * *

MAJ Pak: Harris taewinim, musūn ūmshik choahaseyo?

Jim Harris: Hanguk ūmshik choahaeyo. Pulgogihago kalbi aju choahamnida.

MAJ Pak: A, kūrōseyo? Kimch'ido choahaseyo?

Jim Harris: Mullonyo. Aju mashi issōyo.

MAJ Pak: Kūrōm, hanguk ūmshikchōme kapshida.

Jim Harris: Chossūmnida. Kūrōpshida.

UNIT 5, LESSON 3

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- David Jones: Misūt'ō Cho, iri oseyo.
Kunbok igō ppalli
set'akhago tariseyo. Mr. Cho, please come
over here. Please
wash and iron this
uniform quickly.
- Mr. Cho: Arassūmnida. Myōtshie
kūnmu hashimnikka? All right. What time
do you go to work?
- David Jones: Ohu seshie kūnmu haeya
twemnida. Kūrōnikka,
ppalli haseyo. I have to go to work at
three in the afternoon.
So please do it quickly.
- Mr. Cho: Ne. Kot hagessūmnida. Yes. I'll do it right
away.
- David Jones: Tto paji chōgō chom
susōn haseyo. Kūriigo,
chom iltchigi oseyo. Also, please mend those
pants. And, come a little
early.
- Mr. Cho: Ne. Arassūmnida. Okay. I understand.
- David Jones: Sugo haessūmnida. Thank you for your
efforts.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Misūt'ō is more appropriate for an employee than sōnsaengnim.

Iri means "this way" or "towards me." It is used in directions instead of yōgi, "here" or "this place."

Oseyo is the polite but informal version of oshipshio. You will study this ending specifically for conversations with an employee.

Kunbok is a general word for military uniforms.

Set'ak means "laundry" and set'akha-, "to do laundry."
Set'akhago thus means "wash and."

Tari- means "to iron."

Kūnmu means "performing duty," "work" and kūnmu hamnida means "[I] work," "[I] am on duty."

Kūnmu haeya twemnida means "[I] must work."

Kūrōnikka means "so," "therefore" or "accordingly" and is used at the beginning of a sentence.

Haseyo means "please do [it]," and hagessūmida, "[I] will do."

Chōgō means "that thing," "that one" or "those."

Susōn means "mending," "fixing," and susōn haseyo, "please mend."

Iltchigi is used only with verbs. It is not used with nouns, as in iltchigi chōnyōk, "early dinner."

In Chom iltchigi oseyo, "before I go to work" is understood.

Sugo literally means "hard work," and Sugo haessūmnida, "You have worked hard." It is used to thank someone when he/she has done a job for you, and also when someone agrees to do some work for you.

EXERCISES

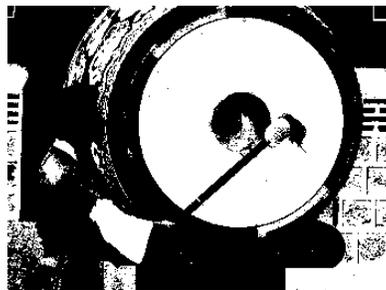


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Misūt'ō Pak, iri chom ppalli oseyo.

Please come here quickly, Mr. Pak.

Kunbok igō chom ppalli set'ak haseyo.

Please wash this uniform quickly.

Onūl ojōn ilgopshie kūnmu haeya twemnida.

I have to go to work at seven this morning.

Kūrōnikka, kot haeya twemnida.

So you have to do it right away.

Ne. Ppalli hagessūmnida. Chigūm myōtshimnikka?

Yes, I will do it quickly. What time is it now?

Tto chōgō susōn haeya twemnida.

You have to mend that also.

Ojōne chom iltchigi oseyo.

Please come a little early in the morning.

Sugo mani haessūmnida.

Thanks a lot.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



Please wash this right away.

Please iron these pants quickly.

I have to go to work at eight o'clock.

Please mend that uniform.

Mr. Cho, please come a little early.

Exercise 4. Repetition.

Omnida.

I'm coming.

Waya twemnida.

I have to come.

Kamnida.

I'm going.

Kaya twemnikka?

Do you have to go?

Ne, kaya twemnida.

Yes, I have to go.

Samnida.

I'm buying.

Saya twemnida.

I have to buy.

Hamnida.

I'm doing it.

Haeya twemnikka?

Do you have to do it?

Ne, haeya twemnida.

Yes, I have to do it.

Kūnmu hamnida.

I'm working.

Kūmnu an hamnida.

I'm not working.

Kūnmu haeya twemnida.

I have to work.

Exercise 5.

You hear: Kamnida.

Say: Kaya twemnida.

Exercise 6.

You hear: Ōnje kashimnikka? tomorrow

Say: Naeil kaya twemnida.

go Thursday

work at seven o'clock

come right away

do quickly

work Friday

Exercise 7. Say in Korean.

I have to work this weekend.

Thank you for your work.

Do you have to go tomorrow?

I must go home now.

I have to wash these blue jeans.

Exercise 8. Repetition.

nūtke

late

Nūtke oshyōssūmnida.

You came late.

Nūtke kaya twemnida.

I have to go late.

hōritti

belt

Hōritti chōgō nōmu pissamnida.

That belt is too expensive.

Tto hōritti issūmnikka?

Do you also have belts?

kunhwa

military boots

Kkamansaek kunhwa
ch'ajūshimnikka?Are you looking for black
boots?

Kunhwa igō nōmu k'ūmnida.

These boots are too big.

kudu

shoes

Kudu chōgō aju chossūmnida

Those shoes are very nice.

Hinsaek kudu igō nōmu
pissamnida.These white shoes are too
expensive.

kyegūpchang

insignia of rank

ch'oroksaek kyegūpchang

green insignia

Exercise 9. Say in English.



Exercise 10. Say in Korean. 

Let me see some black shoes.

Please come a little late tomorrow.

I have to buy some insignia today.

Mr. Cho, where are my boots?

I'm looking for my belt and shoes.

Exercise 11. Repetition.

-ji maseyo

don't ...

Kaji maseyo.

Don't go.

Tariji maseyo.

Don't iron it.

Susōn hajimaseyo.

Don't mend it.

Oji maseyo.

Don't come.

Kūnmu haji maseyo.

Don't work.

Haji maseyo.

Don't do it.

Saji maseyo.

Don't buy it.

Set'ak haji maseyo.

Don't wash it.

Exercise 12. 

You hear: Kashipshio. OR Kaseyo.

Say: Kaji maseyo.

Exercise 13. Say in English. 

Exercise 14. Listening Comprehension.

- a. When does he have to work?
- b. What did he ask Mr. Cho to do?
- c. What did he tell Mr. Cho not to do?
- d. What is he looking for?
- e. What will Mr. Cho mend?

Exercise 15. Say in Korean.

Don't wash that.

Those military boots are too big.

Do you have the insignia?

I will go late.

Don't iron the pants.

I have to come early.

Exercise 16.

<p>You hear: iron that uniform</p>
<p>Say: Kunbok chōgō tariji maseyo.</p>

go early today

come late in the morning

do it right away

work tomorrow

mend this now

Exercise 17.

You hear: fix it today

Say: Onūl susōn haeya twemnida.

come tomorrow

wash this today

work this weekend

fix it Wednesday

do it early

Exercise 18. Role Play.

- a. Call Mr. Cho.
- b. Ask him to wash and iron these blue jeans.
- c. Say that you're going to Seoul at 1 p.m. Then say, "So do it quickly."
- d. Ask him to also mend the insignia.
- e. Say that you have to work at 8 o'clock and ask him not to come late.
- f. Thank him.



Buddha at Bulguksa Temple

Photo: Larry Johnson
Date: 18 Mar 2009
cc-by-2.0

UNIT 5

SELF-EVALUATION QUIZ

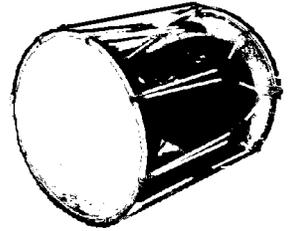


Photo: Visviva
Public Domain

Situation 1. You're David Jones, and you and Mr. Kim are getting better acquainted.

- a. ON TAPE ONLY.
- b. Tell him you came from Chicago. Then say it's your hometown.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. Tell him, "Of course she came along."

Situation 2. Mr. Kim wants to know more about you and your family.

- a. He asks "When did you get married?" Tell him, "Four years ago."
- b. Tell him you have a son and two daughters.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. Tell him they're in the United States.

Situation 3. You'd like to invite Mr. Kim to have dinner with you.

- a. Ask him what he's doing tomorrow night.
- b. He says he's not busy. Say, "Well then, let's have dinner together."
- c. Say, "Let's meet at five o'clock."
- d. Ask him what kind of food he likes.

Situation 4. You're Jim Harris, and you're talking to Mr. Pak, who does your laundry.

- a. Ask him to wash this uniform.
- b. Tell him not to iron it.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. Tell him you have to go to work at 4:00 p.m.

Situation 5. It's 3:30 p.m. now, and you're looking for Mr. Pak.

- a. Ask him to come quickly.
- b. When he arrives, ask him where your uniform and boots are.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. Thank him for his efforts.

UNIT 6

DIRECTIONS



Jangseung and sotdae village guardians near Ongcheon-ri, Andong

Photo: Robert
Date: 23 Jun 2007
cc-by-sa-3.0

UNIT 6

OBJECTIVES

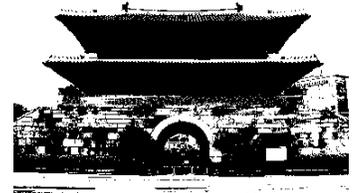


Photo: Gaël Chardon
cc-by-sa-2.0

At the end of Unit 6, you will be able to:

1. Get the attention of a passerby.
2. Make an apology.
3. Ask someone to speak more slowly or repeat something.
4. Ask for and understand simple locations.
5. Ask for and understand simple directions.
6. Use different forms of "this" and "that."
7. Ask how long something will take.
8. Ask for assistance, or for specific persons or agencies that would assist you.
9. Describe a problem or an emergency.
10. Say, "I don't know."



Bulguksa Temple, Gyeongju

UNIT 6, LESSON 1

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- Jim Harris: Yōboseyo! Shilleham-
nida. Hello! Excuse me.
- Passerby: Ne? Yes?
- Jim Harris: Hwajangshil ōdi issūm-
nikka? Where is the rest room?
- Passerby: Chōgi orūntchoge issūm-
nida. It's over there on the
right.
- Jim Harris: Mianhamnida. Chom
ch'ōnch'ōnhi malssūmhae
chushipshio. I'm sorry. Please say
that a little more slowly.
- Passerby: Chōgi orūntchoge issūm-
nida. It's over there on the
right.
- Jim Harris: Ne. Algessūmnida. Kam-
sahamnida. Oh, I see. Thank you.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Yōboseyo is a way to attract a stranger's attention, similar to "Say!" "Hello!" etc. It is also the standard way to say, "Hello" on the telephone.

Shillehamnida, "Excuse me," is used to get someone's attention or to ask someone to step aside. It is also used as you enter someone's office. It is never used to ask someone to repeat something.

Orūntchoqe is orūntchok, "the right side," and -e, "on" or "at." The k is pronounced q when a vowel sound follows it.

Mianhamnida is a general expression for an apology.

Ch'ōnch'ōnhi means "slowly" and malssūmhae chushipshio means "please say," "please tell me" or "please speak."



Bell of King Seongdeok, Gyeongju National Museum

Photo: JeongAhn
Date: 26 Dec 2006
Public Domain

EXERCISES

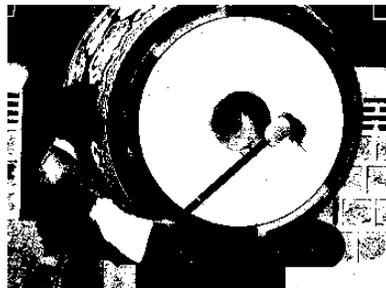


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Hwajangshil issūmnikka?

Do you have a rest room?

Shillehamnida. Yōgi hwajangshil issūmnikka?

Excuse me. Is there a rest room here?

Hanguk ūmshikchōm ōdi issūmnikka?

Where is the Korean restaurant?

Yōboseyo! Shillejiman, hwajangshil ōdi issūmnikka?

Hello! Excuse me, but where is the rest room?

Chōgi orūntchoge issūmnikka?

Is it over there on the right?

Kūkchang chōgi orūntchoge issūmnikka?

Is the theater over there on the right?

Chom ch'ōnch'ōnhi malssūmhae chushipshio.

Please say that a little more slowly.

Ne. Chal algessūmnida.

Yes, I understand very well.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



Are there any rest rooms here?

It's over there on the right.

Hello! Excuse me.

Please say that slowly.

I'm sorry.

Exercise 4. Repetition.

wentchok	left side
wentchoge	on the left
Wentchoge issūmnida.	It's on the left.
wich'ūng	upper level, upstairs
Kūkchang wich'ūnge issūmnida.	The theater is upstairs.
araech'ūng	lower level, downstairs
Hwajangshil araech'ūnge issūmnida.	The rest room is downstairs.
tabang	coffee shop
Tabang wich'ūnge issūmnikka?	Is the coffee shop upstairs?
shiktang	restaurant, dining room, mess hall
Yōgi shiktang ōpsūmnida.	There is no restaurant here.
pilding	building
Pildinge issūmnida.	It's in the building.
Tabang pildinge issūmnida.	The coffee shop is in the building.
hot'el	hotel
Shiktang hot'ere issūmnida.	The dining room is in the hotel.
Naija hot'el	the Naija Hotel, an R & R facility in Seoul
Naija hot'el ōdi issūmnikka?	Where is the Naija Hotel?

NOTE: Shiktang can mean "restaurant," "dining room" or "mess hall," but ūmshikchōm means only "restaurant."

Hot'el is pronounced hot'er- when followed by -e.

Exercise 5. Say in English.



Exercise 6. Say in Korean



Is the coffee shop downstairs?

Where is the theater?

Is it over there on the left?

Aren't there any rest rooms upstairs?

Is there a coffee shop in the hotel?

Is there a restaurant in the building?

Exercise 7. Repetition.

pang

room

Yōgi uri pangimnida.

This is our/my room.

Misū Yi pangimnida.

It's Miss Yi's room.

ch'ōtchae

the first

Ch'ōtchae pangimnida.

It's the first room.

Hwajangshil ch'ōtchae pangimnida.

The rest room is the first room.

tultchae

the second

wentchok tultchae

the second on the left

Wentchok tultchae pangimnida.

It's the second room on the left.

setchae

the third

Setchae pilding hot'erimnida.

The third building is a hotel.

NOTE: Hot'el is pronounced hot'er- when an i follows it.

tashi	again
hanbōn	once
tashi hanbōn	once again
Tashi hanbōn malssūmhae chushipshio.	Please say it once again.

NOTE: Tashi is used when the initial attempt to do something has been unsuccessful, especially when you fail to understand what someone else has said. When tashi is used in a request, it gives it the meaning, "try it again" or "one more time." On the other hand, tto simply means "again," as in "I'll see you again."

Exercise 8. Say in English.



Exercise 9.

You hear: rest room
Say: Hwajangshil ōdi issūmnikka?

coffee shop

mess hall

Mr. Kim's room

Naija Hotel

theater

Exercise 10.

You hear: over there on the left

Say: Hwajangshil chōgi wentchoge issūmnikka?

over there on the right

upstairs

downstairs

in the building

Exercise 11.

You hear: the first building, hotel

Say: Chōgi ch'ōtchae pilding hot'erimnikka?

the second building, Naija Hotel

the third building, theater

the first room, coffee shop

the second room, dining room

Exercise 12.

You hear: coffee shop, over there

Say: Tabang chōgi issūmnikka?

dining room, in the hotel

rest rooms, downstairs

mess hall, first building

Mr. Pak's room, upstairs

rest room, in the coffee shop

Exercise 13. Listening Comprehension.

- a. What is he looking for?
- b. Where is the coffee shop?
- c. Which one is the rest room?
- d. What is upstairs?
- e. What does the next building have?

Exercise 14. Role Play.

- a. Get a passerby's attention.
- b. Ask where the theater is.
- c. Apologize and ask him to say it again.
- d. Ask, "Is it the third building over there?"
- e. Ask if the theater is on the lower level.
- f. Thank him.

Exercise 15. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*



Near the entrance to Gyeongbokgung Palace, Seoul

Photo: Karl Baron
Date: 3 May 2008
cc-by-2.0

Jim Harris: Yōboseyo! Shillehamnida.

Passerby: Ne?

Jim Harris: Hwajangshil ōdi issōyo?

Passerby: Chōgi orūntchoge issōyo.

Jim Harris: Mianhamnida. Chom ch'ōnch'ōnhi malssūmhae chuseyo.

Passerby: Chōgi orūntchoge issōyo.

Jim Harris: Ne. Algessūmnida. Kamsahamnida.

UNIT 6, LESSON 2



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

CONVERSATION

Jim Harris: Yōboseyo! Shillehamnida. Hello! Excuse me.

Passerby: Ne? Yes?

Jim Harris: Pōsū t'ōminal ōttōk'e kamnikka? How do I get to the bus terminal?

Passerby: Chōnegōriesō wentchogūro toshipshio. Kūrigo ttokparo kashipshio. Kūrōmyōn, setchae negōrie issūmnida. Turn left at that intersection over there. And then go straight. Then, it is at the third intersection.

Jim Harris: Shigan ōlmana kōllimnikka? How long does it take?

Passerby: Han shippun kōllimnida. It takes about 10 minutes.

Jim Harris: Ne. Kamsahamnida. I see. Thank you.

Passerby: Ch'ōnmaneyo. You're welcome.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

As you probably guessed, pōsū t'ōminal is borrowed from the English "bus terminal."

Ōttōk'e kamnikka? means "How do I get to?"

Wentchogūro, "to the left," is wentchok, "left side," and ūro, "to" or "toward." Note that k changes to g.

In the phrase chōnegōriesō, chō- means "that (over there)." It is prefixed to a noun just as i-, "this," was in ibun, "this person." Chōbun would be "that person." Chō- and i- are never used by themselves; they are only used in combination with nouns.

Negōri means "intersection" and -esō; "at." Remember that you learned -esō as meaning "from" when it is used with verbs of COMING and GOING. For example, Detroitesō wassūmnida. "I came from Detroit." However, when -esō is used with verbs denoting ACTIVITY, it means "at." Chōnegōriesō wentchogūro toshipshio is "Turn left at that intersection over there." On the other hand, to say something is LOCATED AT a place, you use -e, as in Negōrie issūmnida. "It is at the intersection."

Ttokparo means "straight" or "straight ahead."

Kūrōmyōn literally means "if you do that."

Shigan has two meanings. It can mean "time," as in "how much time," or it can mean "hours," as in "how many hours." To ask "how much time," you use shigan ōlmana. Remember that "how many hours" is myōtshigan.

Han is often used before number expressions to mean "about" or "approximately."

EXERCISES

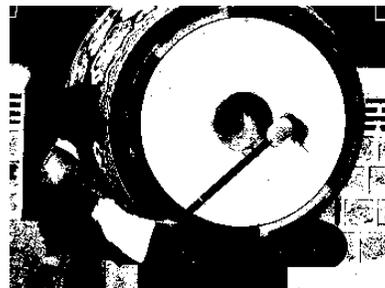


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Seoul shinae òttòk'e kamnikka?

How do I get to downtown Seoul?

Kūkchang òttòk'e kamnikka?

How do I get to the theater?

Wentchogūro kamnikka?

Do I go to the left?

Negōriesō toshipshio.

Turn at the intersection.

Shiktangesō orūntchogūro toshipshio.

Turn right at the restaurant.

Kūrōmyōn, tultchae pildinge issūmnida.

Then, it's in the second building.

Shigan ōlmana kōllimnikka?

How much time does it take?

Han ishibobun kōllimnida.

It takes about 25 minutes.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



How do I get to the mess hall?

How much time does it take?

Do I go to the right?

Is the bus terminal at that intersection?

You're welcome.

	<u>PERSON</u>	<u>THING</u>	<u>PLACE</u>
"this"	<u>ibun</u>	<u>i</u> - "name" or "name" <u>igo</u>	<u>yōgi</u>
"that"	<u>chōbun</u>	<u>chō</u> - "name" or "name" <u>chōgō</u>	<u>chōgi</u>

Exercise 4. Repetition.

Ibuni misū Kimimnida.

This (person) is Miss Kim.

Chōbun kuninimnida.

That person is in the military.

Isagwa an pissamnida.

These apples are not expensive.

Sagwa igō mashi issūmnida.

These apples are delicious.

Chōtamnyo chossūmnida.

That blanket is good.

Tamnyo chōgō chushipshio.

Give me that blanket.

Yōgi tabangimnida.

This (place) is a coffee shop.

Chōgi ūmshikchōmimnida.

That (place) is a restaurant.

Exercise 5. Say in English.



Exercise 6. Say in Korean.



Is it at this intersection?

That person is MAJ Yi.

Turn left at that intersection.

I'll buy these blue jeans.

Is this place the bus terminal?

Is that place a coffee shop?

Exercise 7. Role Play.



a. Get a passerby's attention.

b. Ask how you can get to the bus terminal.

c. Say that you understand.

d. Say that you have to go to Seoul and ask what the bus fare is.

e. Say "Thank you."

Exercise 8. Repetition.

yōk

Seoul yōk ōttōk'e kamnikka?

paekhwajōm

Paekhwajōm taūm negōrie
issūmnida.

shijang

Tongdaemun shijang ōttōk'e
kamnikka?

shinhodūng

Taūm shinhodūngesō wentchogūro
toshipshio.

yōp'

yōp'e

Paekhwajōm yōp'e issūmnida.

yukkyo

Yukkyo yōp'e tabang issūmnida.

chihado

Tultchae chihado yōp'e
issūmnida.

railroad station

How do I get to the Seoul
Railroad Station?

department store

There's a department store at
the next intersection.

market, marketplace

How do I get to the Tongdaemun
Market?

traffic light

Turn left at the next traffic
light.

side

by, next to

It is next to the department
store.

a pedestrian overpass

There's a coffee shop by the
overpass.

underpass, underground walkway

It is by the second underpass.

Exercise 9. Say in English.



Exercise 12. Say in English.



Exercise 13. Say in Korean.



I came to Korea last year.

I came from Boston.

When do you go to the United States?

Let's have dinner at that restaurant.

It's at the second traffic light.

Exercise 14. Role Play.



- a. Say that you don't have anything special to do.
- b. Say it's OK and ask when.
- c. Ask if the Ch'ongsa Coffee Shop is next to the Naija Hotel.
- d. Confirm that it's at the first traffic light.
- e. Say that you understand and that your wife will go too.

Exercise 15. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Seoul Bus, Sub-trunk line 144

Photo: Excretion at en.wikipedia
Date: 29 July 2006
cc-by-sa-2.0

Jim Harris: Yōboseyo! Shillehamnida.

Passerby: Ne?

Jim Harris: Pōsū t'ōminal ōttōk'e kamnikka?

Passerby: Chō negōriesō wentchogūro toseyo. Kūrigo ttokparo kaseyo. Kūrōmyōn, setchae negōrie issōyo.

Jim Harris: Shigan ōlmana kōllimnikka?

Passerby: Han shippun kōllyōyo.

Jim Harris: Ne. Kamsahamnida.

Passerby: Ch'ōnmaneyo.



Seoul Bus stop - digital display indicates bus arrival time

Photo: hojusaram
Date: 8 Jul 2007
cc-by-sa-2.0

UNIT 6, LESSON 3

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- Jim Harris: Yōboseyo! Chom towa chushipshio. Hello! Can you help me?
- Passerby: Ne. Musūn irimnikka? Sure. What's the matter?
- Jim Harris: Kil irōssūmnida. Ibugūne migun emp'i issūmnikka? I'm lost. Are there any American MPs in this area?
- Passerby: Chal morūgessūmnida. I don't know.
- Jim Harris: Nugu yōngō hashimnikka? Does anyone here speak English?
- Passerby: Kūlsseyo. Chal mot hamnida. I'm not sure. I can't.
- Jim Harris: Kūrōm, p'ach'ulso ōdi issūmnikka? Well, where is the police substation?
- Passerby: A, p'ach'ulsoyo? Kach'i kapshida. Chōl ttara oshipshio. Oh, the police substation? Let's go together. Please follow me.
- Jim Harris: Kamsahamnida. Thank you.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Chom towa chushipshio means "Please help me." Americans usually express this request as "Can you help me?"

Irimnikka is il, "matter," "thing" or "problem," plus -imnikka. Note that il is pronounced ir- when an -i follows it.

Kil means "way" or "road," and irōssūmnida means "lost" or "have lost." Kil irōssūmnida literally means "to have lost one's way."

Ibugūne means "in this area."

Morūgessūmnida means "I don't know."

Nugu can mean "who," "whom," "someone" or "anyone."

Yōngō is "English." Hamnida means "speak" when it is used with the name of a language.

Mot hamnida means "[I] cannot."

P'ach'ulso refers to police substations, which are located at strategic places in every town. The duty officer there will call an American MP for you in an emergency.

Remember, -yo is used as an ending when a phrase or word is used by itself as a question instead of in a full sentence. For example Pach'ulsoyo? "The police substation?"

Chōl means "me" as opposed to chōnūn, "I."

Ttara means "following" so ttara oshipshio is "please follow."

EXERCISES

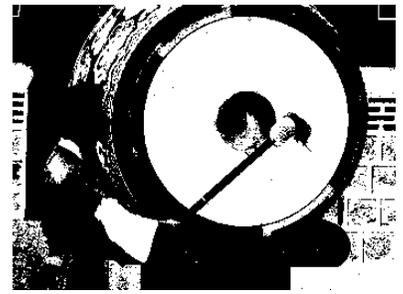


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Ton irōssūmnida.

I lost my money.

Shigye irōssūmnida.

I lost my watch.

Ibugūne p'ach'ulso issūmnikka?

Is there a police substation in this area?

Ibugūne shiktang issūmnikka?

Is there a mess hall around here?

Nugu chom towa chushipshio.

Somebody please help me.

Nugu ch'ajūshimnikka?

Whom are you looking for?

Nugu oshyōssūmnikka?

Who came?

Yōgi migun emp'i ōpsūmnida.

There are no American MPs here.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.

Where are the American MPs?

Is there a police substation in this area?

I am lost.

Does anyone here speak English?

Can you help me?

I don't know.

Exercise 4. Repetition.

migunbudaē

American military installation

Ibugūne migunbudaē
issūmnikka?

Is there an American military
post in this area?

chigap

wallet

Chigap irōssūmnida.

I lost my wallet.

chōnhwa

telephone

Chōnhwa issūmnikka?

Do you have a telephone?

pul

fire

nassūmnida

broke out

Pul nassūmnida!

There's a fire!

Hot'ere pul nassūmnida!

There's a fire in the hotel!

NOTE: Budaē is a general word for any military post or base.

Exercise 5. Say in English.

Exercise 6. Say in Korean.



Is this building a police substation?

I am lost. Can you help me?

How do I get to the American military post?

Excuse me, but does anyone here speak English?

There's a fire! Do you have a telephone?

I lost my wallet.

Exercise 7.

You hear: here, way

Say: Yōgisō kil irōssūmnida.

in a bus, money

railroad station, wallet

theater, watch

rest room, ring

Exercise 8.

You hear: upstairs

Say: Wich'ūnge pul nassūmnida!

downstairs

hotel

bathroom

department store

Exercise 9.

You hear: police substation

Say: P'ach'ulsoe kach'i kapshida.

Seoul Station

American military post

department store

my house

Exercise 10.

You hear: anyone

Say: Nugu yōngō hashimnikka?

Mr. Kim

that person

that service member

your wife

CPT Chang

Exercise 11.

You hear: in this area, American MPs

Say: Ibugūne migun emp'i issūmnikka?

here, telephone

in this area, American military post

next intersection, hotel

over there, police substation

Exercise 12. Listening Comprehension.

- a. What is he looking for?
- b. Why does he want a telephone?
- c. What did he lose?
- d. Where are they going?

Exercise 13. Role Play.

- a. Get a passerby's attention and say that you need help.
- b. Say that you lost your wallet and ask if there is a U.S. military post nearby.
- c. Ask if anyone speaks English.
- d. Then ask where the police substation is.
- e. Thank him.

Exercise 14. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Front entrance of the Seoul Station

Photo: pravin.premkumar
Date: 12 Feb 2002
cc-by-2.0

Jim Harris: Yōboseyo. Chom towa chuseyo.

Passerby: Ne. Musūn irimnikka?

Jim Harris: Kil irōssōyo. Ibugūne migun emp'i issōyo?

Passerby: Chal morūgessōyo.

Jim Harris: Nugu yōngō haseyo?

Passerby: Kūlsseyo. Chal mot haeyo.

Jim Harris: Kūrōm, p'ach'ulso ōdi issōyo?

Passerby: A, p'ach'ulsoyo? Kach'i kapshida. Chōl ttara oseyo.

Jim Harris: Kamsahamnida.



Korea Train eXpress (KTX) at Seoul station

Photo: tokorozawa22
Date: 18 Jun 2010
cc-by-sa-3.0

UNIT 6

SELF-EVALUATION QUIZ

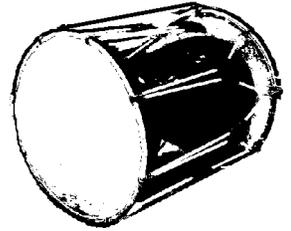


Photo: Visviva
Public Domain

Situation 1. You're Jim Harris, and you've lost your way while looking for the Hanilgwan Restaurant.

- a. Get the attention of a passerby.
- b. Ask where the restaurant is.
- c. He answers, but too quickly for you to understand. Ask him to say it more slowly.
- d. ON TAPE ONLY.
- e. You understand him this time. How do you repond?

Situation 2. Now that you've eaten, you decide to do a little shopping.

- a. Excuse yourself, and ask the restaurant's cashier how to get to the Lotte department store.
- b. She spoke slowly, but you still didn't understand. Ask her to say it again.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. Ask her how long it takes.
- e. ON TAPE ONLY.

Situation 3. While shopping, you need to find a rest room. You get the attention of one of the employees.

- a. Tell him you're looking for the rest room. Then ask if there's one here.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. You make your way upstairs and ask another employee. She points to the left, where you see several doors. Ask if it's the first room.
- d. ON TAPE ONLY.

Situation 4. You're David Jones. You've gotten lost while riding your bicycle in the countryside.

- a. Get a stranger's attention and ask for his help.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. Tell him you're lost. Then ask how to get to the American military post.
- d. On TAPE ONLY.

Situation 5. You decide to continue on your way. You stop at a village to ask a stranger for help.

- a. Ask him if there's police substation in the area.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. At the police station, ask if anyone speaks English.
- d. ON TAPE ONLY.
- e. Ask if there are any American MPs in the area.

UNIT 7

RESTAURANTS AND FOOD



Andong jjimdak, a Korean dish

Photo: Takoradee
Date: 15 Jun 2010
cc-by-sa-3.0

UNIT 7

OBJECTIVES

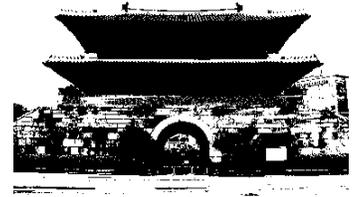


Photo: Gaël Chardon
cc-by-sa-2.0

At the end of Unit 7, you will be able to:

1. Order several types of food and beverages.
2. Ask for side dishes, condiments, utensils and other items that might be needed.
3. Ask that you be given more of a certain item.
4. Ask for a private room in a restaurant.
5. Say that you don't need something.
6. Suggest that someone try something.
7. Ask what a Korean word means in English.
8. Ask what something is called is Korean.



Dished at Sosim, a vegetarian restaurant located in Anguk-dong, Jongno-gu, Seoul

Photo: taylorandayumi
Date: 21 Apr 2008
cc-by-sa-2.0

UNIT 7, LESSON 1

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- Waitress: Mwō hashigessūmnikka? What would you like?
- David Jones: K'ōp'i chushipshio. Give me some coffee.
- Mike Williams: Chōnūn sagwa jyusū hanjan chushipshio. Give me a glass of apple juice.
- Yi In-Shik: Chōnūn insamch'a haggessūmnida. I'll have insamch'a.
- Waitress: Ne. Arassūmnida. Okay. I understand.
- * * *
- David Jones: Aniyo. K'ūrim p'iryō ōpsūmnida. No. I don't need any cream.
- Mike Williams: Musūn ch'amnikka? What kind of tea is that?
- Yi In-Shik: Insamch'amnida. It's insamch'a.
- Mike Williams: Insamch'ayo? Insam yōngōro mwōmnikka? Insamch'a? What's insam in English?
- Yi In-Shik: Yōngōro "ginseng"-imnida. In English it's "ginseng."
- Mike Williams: A, ne. Algessūmnida. Mashi issūmnikka? Oh, okay. I see. Is it good?
- Yi In-Shik: Ne. Aju mashi chossūmnida. Hanbōn haeboshipshio. Yes. It tastes very good. Try it some time.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Hashigessūmnikka? literally means "Would you like to do?" but it is "Would you like to have?" when the subject is food or drinks. Hagessūmnida (without -shi) is "I will have."

Chōnūn, "I," is often used to distinguish yourself from someone else. For example, if your friend wants tea but you want coffee, and he orders first, you could say, Chōnūn k'ōp'i hagessūnida. This means, "As for me, I'll have coffee."

P'iryo is "need" so p'iryo ōpsūmnida can mean either "I don't need any" or "there's no need for."

At most coffee shops in Korea, the waitress brings cream and sugar with the coffee and will automatically pour cream into your coffee unless you stop her.

Ch'a is a generic word for "tea."

Mwōmnikka is mwō, "what," and -imnikka, "is it."

-ro means "by means of" or "using," so yōngōro means "in English."

Hanbōn means "once" and haeboshipshio means "try (having) it." Remember, ibōboshipshio meant "try (wearing) it."

EXERCISES

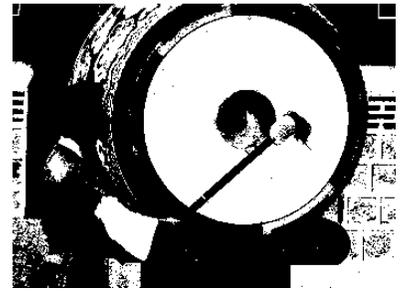


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition

Mwō hashigessūmnikka?

What would you like?

Maekchu hashigessūmnikka?

Would you like a beer?

Chōnūn saida hanjan chushipshio.

Please give me a glass of lemon-lime soda.

Chōnūn k'ōp'i hagessūmnida.

I'll have coffee.

P'iryō ōpsūmnida.

I don't need it. OR It's not necessary.

Chōnūn igō p'iryō ōpsūmnida.

I don't need this.

Chōgō musūn k'ōp'imnikka?

What kind of coffee is that?

Igō mwōmnikka?

What's this?

Igō yōngōro mwōmnikka?

What's this in English?

Insamch'a hanbōn haeboshipshio.

Try some ginseng tea some time.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



Then, give me a cup of ginseng tea.

What is this in English?

Is ginseng tea expensive?

This doesn't taste good.

What kind of juice is this?

I don't need cream. Thank you.

Exercise 4. Repetition

sōlt'ang	sugar
Sōlt'ang chom chushipshio.	Please give me some sugar.
Sōlt'ang p'iryo ōpsūmnida.	I don't need sugar.
orenji	orange
orenji jyusū	orange juice
Orenji jyusū hagesūmnida.	I'll have orange juice.
hongch'a	black tea
Hongch'a ōpsūmnikka?	Don't you have black tea?
Hongch'a hanjan chushipshio.	Give me a cup of black tea.
sōngnyang	matches
Sōngnyang issūmnikka?	Do you have any matches?
chaettōri	ashtray
Chaettōri chom chushipshio.	Please give me an ashtray.
hangungmal	the Korean language
hangungmallo	in Korean
Igō hangungmallo mwōmnikka?	What is this in Korean?
Hangungmallo morūgessūmnida.	I don't know what it is in Korean.

Note: Mal means "language." In hangungmal, the k in hanguk is pronounced ng because of the following m. Also, -ro is pronounced -lo after mal.

Exercise 5. Say in English.



Exercise 6. Say in Korean.



What is that in Korean?

I don't need sugar.

Does black tea taste good?

I don't know what it is in Korean.

I don't have any matches.

What is chaettōri in English?

Exercise 7.

You hear: Insam

Say: Insam yōngōro "ginseng"-imnida.

ton

sōlt'ang

pae

sōngnyang

tambae

Exercise 8.

You hear: shoes

Say: "Shoes" hangungmallo mwōmnikka?

OR

You hear: sagwa

Say: Sagwa yōngōro mwōmnikka?

black tea

ginseng tea

kohyang

sugar

chaettōri

kalbi

Exercise 9.

You hear: coffee and cream

Say: K'ōp'i hago k'ūrim chushipshio.

black tea and cream

ginseng tea and sugar

orange juice and coffee

apple juice and orange juice

Exercise 10.

You hear: beer

Say: Maekchu p'iryo ōpsūmnida.

ashtray

sugar

cream

money

Exercise 11. Role Play. 

- a. Say that you'll have a cup of tea.
- b. Ask what kinds of tea they have.
- c. Ask what insam is in English.
- d. Say that you understand and order one cup.

Exercise 12. 

You hear: Kaseyo.

Say: Kaji maseyo.

Exercise 13. Role Play.



- a. Say that you are not busy.
- b. Agree and ask what day of the week.
- c. Say that's OK and ask, "What time?"
- d. Say that you understand.

Exercise 14. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Sinseollo, a Korean royal court dish

Photo: adifromusa
Date: 12 Aug 2006
cc-by-sa-2.0

Waitress: Mwō hashigessōyo?
David Jones: K'ōp'i chuseyo.
Mike williams: Chōnūn sagwa jyusū hanjan chuseyo.
Yi In-Shik: Chōnūn insamch'a hagessōyo.
Waitress: Ne. Arassūmnida.

* * *

David Jones: Aniyō. K'ūrim p'iryō ōpsōyo.
Mike Williams: Musūn ch'amnikka?
Yi In-Shik: Imsamch'ayeyo.
Mike Williams: Insamch'ayo? Insam yōngōro mwōyeyo?
Yi In-Shik: Yōngōro ginseng-yeyo.
Mike Williams: A, ne. Arassōyo. Mashi issōyo?
Yi In-Shik: Ne. Aju mashi choayo. Hanbōn haebōseyo.

UNIT 7, LESSON 2

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

- Waitress: Mwō hashigessūmnikka? What would you like?
- MAJ Pak: Kūlsseyo. Pulgogi
ōttōssūmnikka? Well, let's see. How
about pulgogi?
- Jim Harris: Kūrōpshida. Pulgogi aju
chossūmnida. Yes, let's have that.
Pulgogi's really good.
- Bill Brown: Pulgogi maepsūmnikka? Is pulgogi hot?
- MAJ Pak: Aniyō. An maepsūmnida. No, it's not hot.
- Bill Brown: Sogogimnikka? Is it beef?
- MAJ Pak: Ne. Kūrōssūmnida. Yes. That's right.
- Bill Brown: Kūrōm, chōdo pulgogi
hagessūmnida. Well then, I'll have
pulgogi too.
- MAJ Pak: Agassi! Pulgogi paekpan
saminbunhago O.B. maekchu
sebyōng chushipshio. Miss! Give us three
pulgogi dinners and
three bottles of O.B.
beer.
- Waitress: Arassūmnida. Okay.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Maep- means "to be hot." It refers to the amount of spices, particularly red pepper, used in the food. It does not refer to temperature.

Sogogi means "beef." Notice that -i in -imnikka or -imnida is dropped when it follows a vowel, for example, Sogogimnikka?

Chōdo is chō, "I," and -do, "too."

Agassi is used to address young females.

Pulgogi paekpan refers to a full course dinner consisting of pulgogi, rice, soup, and several side dishes. When the dinner is served for more than one person, the entree and side dishes are shared, with separate portions of rice and soup for each person.

Saminbunhago is saminbun, "three orders," and hago, "and." -inbun is a counter for orders or servings of food.

EXERCISES

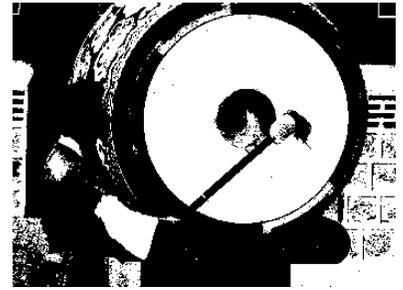


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Igimch'i aju maepsūmnikka?

Is this kimchi very hot?

Ne. Chom maepsūmnida.

Yes, it's a little hot.

Pulgogido maepsūmnikka?

Is pulgogi also hot?

Pyōllo an maepsūmnida.

It's not really hot.

Kimch'i mashi ōttōssūmnikka?

How does the kimchi taste?

Kalbi ōttōssūmnikka?

How about kalbi?

Chōnūn sogogi choahamnida.

I like beef.

Pulgogi sainbun chushipshio.

Give us four orders of pulgogi.

NOTE: Kimch'i is pronounced gimch'i when it follows i- or chō-.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



Is this food very hot?

Is the pulgogi dinner hot?

Give us three orders of kalbi.

Is this beef?

Miss! Give us two bottles of O.B. beer, please.

Exercise 4. Repetition.

kogi	meat
Musūn kogi choahashimnikka?	What kind of meat do you like?
twaejigogi	pork
Igō twaejigogimnikka?	Is this pork?
takkogi	chicken
Chōnūn takkogi choahamnida.	I like chicken.
mandukuk	wonton soup
Mandukuk mashi issūmnikka?	Does wonton soup taste good?
pibimpap	rice with vegetables and meat
Pibimpap tul chushipshio.	Give us two bowls of pibimbap.
komt'ang	rice with thick soup made from beef bones
Komt'ang an maepsūmnida.	Komt'ang is not hot.
kalbitchim	beef rib stew
Kalbitchim iinbun chushipshio.	Two orders of kalbitchim, please.
kyesansō	check or bill
Kyesansō chushipshio.	Please bring us the check.

NOTE: Kogi is pronounced gogi after a vowel sound, as in sogogi.

Exercise 5. Role Play. 

- a. Say that you like American food.
- b. Say, "Of course."
- c. Say that pulgogi is delicious.
- d. Say that the kimchi is too hot.

Exercise 6. Say in English. Exercise 7. Say in Korean. 

Give me some wonton soup and some beer.
 How much are three orders of kalbitchim?
 Is komt'ang beef?
 Do you like pork?
 Miss! Check, please.

Exercise 8.

You hear: a pulgogi dinner

Say: Pulgogi paekpan irinbun chushipshio.

OR Pulgogi paekpan hana chushipshio.

two kalbi dinners

three orders of kabitchim

wonton soup

two bottles of O.B. beer

Exercise 9.

You hear: K'ōp'i choahamnida.

Say: K'ōp'i an choahamnida.

Exercise 10.

You hear: Mwō hashigessūmnikka? pulgogi and coffee

Say: Pulgogihago k'ōp'i chushipshio.

kalbi and beer

wonton soup and pibimpap

kalbitchim and komt'ang

pulgogi dinner and cola

Exercise 11.

You hear: Musun ūmshik choahashimnikka? pulgogi

Say: Pulgogi choahamnida.

wonton soup

pork

pibimpap

beef

Exercise 12. Role Play.



- a. Ask what they have.
- b. Ask if kalbi is beef.
- c. Ask if it's hot.
- d. Say that you'll have the kalbi dinner then.
- e. Ask her for a bottle of beer too.

Exercise 13. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Bulgogi - Korean barbecue

Photo: gigijin
Date: 20 May 2006
cc-by-sa-2.0

Waitress: Mwō hashigessōyo?

MAJ Pak: Kūlsseyo. Pulgogi ōttōssūmnikka?

Jim Harris: Kūrōpshida. Pulgogi aju choayo.

Bill Brown: Pulgogi maewōyo?

MAJ Pak: Aniyō. An maewōyo.

Bill Brown: Sogogiyeyo?

MAJ Pak: Ne. Kūraeyo.

Bill Brown: Kūrōm, chōdo pulgogi hagessōyo.

MAJ Pak: Agassi! Pulgogi paekpan saminbunhago
O.B. maekchu sebyōng chuseyo.

Waitress: Arassūmnida.

NOTE: Maewōyo is a less formal way to say either maepsūmnikka or maepsūmnida.

David Jones: Yōboseyo! Agassi! Hello! Miss!

Waitress: Ne? Yes?

David Jones: Yōgi kanjang chom tō Bring us a little more
chushipshio. soy sauce, please.

Waitress: Arassūmnida. Okay.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Notice that -pun is used to ask about other people, and saram is used to speak about yourself and your group.

Some restaurants have private rooms for groups. That's why SFC Yi asked for a room.

Mōk- means "to eat" and mōkkessūmnida, "will eat."

Pap means "cooked rice." However, since rice is the staple food for Koreans, it often refers to a meal.

Sul is a generic word for alcoholic beverages.

Soju is a strong, clear distilled liquor.

Tō means "more."

EXERCISES

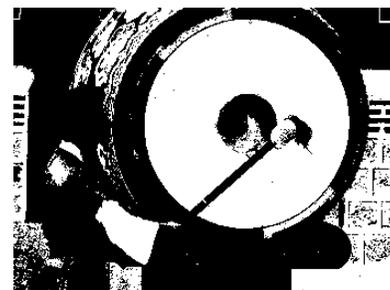


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Modu myōtpunimnikka?

How many people are there altogether?

Modu tasōtsaramimnida.

Five people altogether.

Onūl pang issūmnikka?

Do you have rooms today?

Pang mani issūmnida. Chōl ttara oshipshio.

We have many rooms. Please follow me.

Onūldo kalbi hashigessūmnikka?

Would you like kalbi today too?

Musūn sul hashigessūmnikka?

What kind of drinks would you like?

Onūl soju mashigessūmnida.

Today I'm going to drink soju.

Isul mashiji maseyo.

Don't drink this liquor.

Yōgi kimch'i chom tō chushipshio.

Please bring us a little more kimchi.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



I'll drink soju today.

What's kanjang in English?

Please give me more rice.

Please give us some cola and some lemon-lime soda too.

The beer is good. Try it.

Exercise 4. Role Play.



a. Say that there are three people.

b. Say that you will have kalbitchim and pulgogi.

c. Say, "No," that you will drink soju.

d. Say that you don't need rice.

Exercise 5. Repetition.

sogūm

salt

huch'u

black pepper

mul

water

namul

vegetable side dishes

p'odoju

wine

makkōlli

unrefined rice wine

p'ok'ū

fork

naip'ū

knife

naepk'in

napkin

Exercise 6.

You hear: salt

Say: Sogūm chom chushipshio.

more namul

more makkōlli

one more bottle of wine

the check

matches and an ashtray

Exercise 7. Say in Korean. 

There's no pepper here.

I don't need a fork.

The wine tastes good.

Give me some more napkins.

Give me a glass of water.

Exercise 8. 

You hear: Pang issūmnida.

Say: Pang issūmnikka?

Exercise 9.

You hear: Chibe kamnida.
Say: Chibe kapshida.

Exercise 10. Listening Comprehension.

- a. What does he say he doesn't need?
- b. What kind of drinks does he want?
- c. What does he want?
- d. What does he want to drink?
- e. Who likes kalbi?

Exercise 11.

You hear: salt
Say: Sogūmdo chom tō chushipshio.

pepper

water

napkin

makkōlli

wine

Exercise 12. Role Play.



- a. Say that you want three orders of kalbi.
- b. Say, "Yes," and that you're going to have drinks too.
- c. Say that you want makkōlli and wine.
- d. Ask where the rest room is.
- e. Say, "Thank you."

Exercise 13. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Hostess: Ōsō oseyo. Myōtpunyeyo?

Yi In-Shik: Sesaramyo. Pang issōyo?

Hostess: Ne. Iri oseyo.

* * *

Waitress: Mwō hashigessōyo?

David Jones: Mullon kalbi mōkkessōyo.

Mike Williams: Paphago kimch'ido chuseyo.

Waitress: Mullonimnida. Suldo hashigessōyo?

David Jones: Ne. Soju mashipshida.

Yi In-Shik: Chossūmnida. Agassi, sojudo tubyōng chuseyo.

* * *

David Jones: Yōboseyo! Agassi!

Waitress: Ne?

David Jones: Yōgi kanjang chom tō chuseyo.

Waitress: Arassūmnida.

NOTE: Sesaramyo is sesaram and the ending -yo.

UNIT 7

SELF-EVALUATION QUIZ

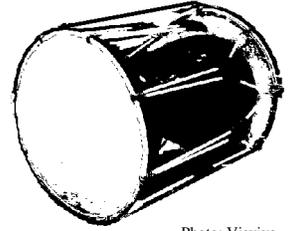


Photo: Visviva
Public Domain

Situation 1. You're David Jones. You and a few friends have stopped in at coffee shop.

- a. ON TAPE ONLY.
- b. Order for your group. You'll need three cups of coffee and two cups of black tea.
- c. The waitress starts to prepare your coffee for you. Tell her you don't need cream and sugar.

Situation 2. After you leave the coffee shop, you and your friends go to a nearby restaurant for dinner. The hostess greets you at the door.

- a. Tell her there are five of you altogether. Then ask if they have any rooms today.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. Suggest to your friends that you drink soju.
- d. The waitress brings your food. Ask her to bring some salt and pepper.

Situation 3. You're still at the restaurant, enjoying your meal.

- a. Ask the waitress to bring you a little more kimchi and soy sauce.
- b. At the end of the meal, you take out your cigarettes. However, there's no ashtray on the table. Call the waitress and ask her to bring you one.
- c. She brings the ashtray and some matches. Tell her you don't need matches.
- d. Ask her to bring two more bottles of soju.

Situation 4. You're Jim Harris. You and some friends of yours are at a restaurant, discussing what to order.

- a. ON TAPE ONLY.
- b. Ask him, "What kind of meat is it? Is it pork?"
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. Say that you understand, then ask if kalbi is hot.

Situation 5. Dinner arrives, and you're curious about what the others have ordered.

- a. As you point at your neighbor's dinner, excuse yourself and ask what it is called in Korean.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. Answer his question.
- d. You've finished eating, so call the waitress and ask for the check.

UNIT 8

TRANSPORTATION



Gangbyeonbukro during rush hour (Wonhyo-gyo Bridge in background)

Photo: Doo ho Kim
Date: 20 May 2009
cc-by-sa-2.0

UNIT 8

OBJECTIVES

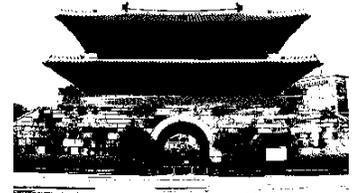


Photo: Gaël Chardon
cc-by-sa-2.0

At the end of Unit 8, you will be able to:

1. Tell the cabdriver where you want to get out.
2. Use the names of some Korean cities near military bases in directions and questions.
3. Ask where to buy bus or train tickets, and specify first-class or coach tickets as required.
4. Ask the fare to a destination.
5. Ask what time a train or bus departs, and what time it arrives.
6. Ask which bus takes you to your destination.
7. Ask which place or item is good.



Gangbyeonbukro 70 East sign

Photo: Doo ho Kim
Date: 20 May 2009
cc-by-sa-2.0

UNIT 8, LESSON 1

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

David Jones: T'aekshi! Taxi!

Taxi Driver: Ōdi kashimnikka? Where are you going?

David Jones: Pudae chōngmunkkaji kapshida. Take me up to the post's main gate.

Taxi Driver: Ne. Okay.

* * *

Taxi Driver: Ōdisō naerishigessūmnikka? Where would you like to get out?

David Jones: Chōngmun paro ap'esō naerigessūmnida. I'll get out right in front of the main gate. Yogūm ōlmamnikka? How much is the fare?

Taxi Driver: Ch'ōnbaegwōnimnida. It's 1,100 won.

David Jones: Yōgi issūmnida. Here you are. Thank you. Sugohaessūmnida.

Taxi Driver: Ne. Annyōngghi kashipshio. Sure. Good-bye.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

As you learned before, pudae means "military post" or "base."

Chōngmunkkaji is chōngmun, "main gate" or "main door" and -kkaji, "up to," "to" or "as far as."

Remember ōdisō is used to say "where at"; it indicates the place where something is done.

Naeri- means "to get out" or "to get off (of a vehicle)."

Paro ap'esō is paro, "right" or "just," ap' "front," and -esō, "at." Here, -esō means "at" because it's used to indicate where the action is taking place. Notice that the whole phrase paro ap'esō follows chōngmun to mean "right in front of the main gate."

Remember, Sugo haessūmnida is used to thank someone for his work or his efforts. David Jones uses this expression to thank the taxi driver for the service.

EXERCISES

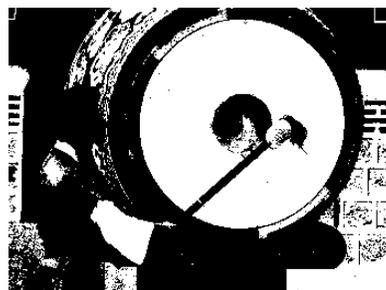


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Ōdikkaji kashimnikka?

Where are you going?

Migunbudaē chōngmunkkaji kapshida.

Take me up to the main gate of the American military post.

Paro yōgisō naerigessūmnida.

I'll get off right here.

Chōyukkyo yōp'esō naerigessūmnida.

I'll get off next to that overpass over there.

Tongduch'ōnkkaji pōsū yogūm ōlmamnikka?

How much is the bus fare to Tongduch'ōn?

Chōgisō wentchogūro kapshida.

Let's go to the left from there.

Naija hot'el ap'ūro kapshida.

Take me to the front of the Naija Hotel.

Seoul yōk-kkaji kashimnikka?

Are you going to Seoul Station?

NOTE: After migun, "American military," pudae is pronounced -budaē.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean. 

Take me up to the main gate of the American military post.

Take me up to Tongdaemun Market.

How much is the taxi fare up to the main gate?

I'll get off right over there.

I'll get off right in front of the department store.

Exercise 4. Role Play. 

- a. Hail a taxi.
- b. Ask him to take you to the Seoul Railroad Station.
- c. Say that you'll get off right in front of the station.
- d. Ask what the fare is.
- e. Give the money to the driver and thank him.

Exercise 5. Review.

-e

Chōngmune issūmnida.

It's at the main gate.
(LOCATION)

Miguge kagessūmnida.

I'm going to go to America.
(DESTINATION)

T'oyoire kagessūmnida.

I'm going to go on Saturday.
(DATE)

Ilgopshie oshipshio.

Please come at seven o'clock.
(TIME)-esō

Migugesō wassūmnida.

I came from America.
(ORIGIN)Tabangesō k'ōp'i
hamnida.I'm having coffee in a
coffee shop. (PLACE OF ACTION)Chōngmunesō naeri-
gessūmnida.I'll get out at the main
gate. (PLACE OF ACTION)

Exercise 6. Repetition.

Songt'an	town outside the main gate of Osan Air Force Base (AFB)
Osan	both a city and a county; also Osan AFB
kiji	base
Osangiji	literally, Osan base
Osan konggungiji	Osan AFB
Tongduch'ōn	city north of Seoul; site of Camp Casey, Headquarters 2nd Infantry Division
isadan	literally, 2nd Division
isadan chōngmun	2nd Division's main gate
Ūijōngbu	city between Seoul and Tongduch'on, site of Camp Red Cloud
Tongduch'ōnesō Ūijōngbukkaji	from Tongduch'on to Uijongbu
Neshikkaji oshipshio.	Please come by four o'clock.

NOTE: Isadan is i, "two," and sadan, "division."

Kiji is pronounced -giji when it follows a consonant.

Remember that -esō will be shortened to -sō when it follows vowels, as in yōqisō, "from here" and ōdisō, "from where."

When -kkaji is used with a time expression, it means "by."

Exercise 7. Say in Korean.



Take me to Osan Air Force Base.

How much is the fare from Seoul to Songt'an?

I'll get off right in front of the base's main gate.

I'm going up to the 2nd Division.

Please come by six o'clock.

Exercise 8.

You hear: up to Seoul

Say: Seoulkkaji kagessūmnida.

up to Songt'an

by three o'clock

on Wednesday

next month

up to Ūijōngbu

Exercise 9.

You hear: right in front of the main gate

Say: Chōngmun paro ap'esō naerigessūmnida.

beside the building

on the right side of the Naija Hotel

on the left side of the theater

right here

Exercise 10.

You hear: one and a half hours

Say: Hanshigan ban kōllimnida.

five hours

10 minutes

four and a half hours

30 minutes

12 hours

Exercise 11.

You hear: from America to Korea, 12 hours

Say: Migugesō hanguk-kkaji yōltushigan kōllimnida.

from Korea to America, 10 hours

from Tongduch'ōn to Ūijōngbu, 40 minutes

from Seoul to Osan, one and a half hours

from the Naija Hotel to Seoul Station, 20 minutes

Exercise 12. Listening Comprehension.

- a. Where is he going?
- b. Where does he want to get off?
- c. What fare is he asking about?
- d. When is he going?
- e. By what time does he have to go?

Exercise 13. Say in Korean.



Where are you going from here?

Take me up to the 2nd Division's main gate.

What time are you going to Osan Air Force Base?

I have to go by 8 a.m.

Does this bus go to Tongduch'ōn?

Exercise 14. Role Play.

- a. Ask if this bus goes to Ūijōngbu.
- b. Ask the fare.
- c. Say that you'll get off in front of the U.S. military post.
- d. Ask how much time it takes to get to Ūijōngbu.
- e. Thank her.

Exercise 15. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Osan Air Force Base Main Gate

Photo: Steve46814
Date: 25 Jun 2006
cc-by-sa-3.0

David Jones: T'aekshi!

Taxi Driver: Ōdi kaseyo?

David Jones: Pudae chōngmunkkaji kapshida.

Taxi Driver: Ne.

* * *

Taxi Driver: Ōdisō naerishigessōyo?

David Jones: Chōngmun paro ap'esō naerigessōyo. Yogūm ōlmamnikka?

Taxi Driver: Ch'ōnbaegwōnimnida.

David Jones: Yōgi issūmnida. Sugohaessōyo.

Taxi Driver: Ne. Annyōngghi kaseyo.



Camp Bonifas main gate, Korean Demilitarized Zone

Photo: Edward N. Johnson, U.S. Army Public Affairs Officer
 Date: 16 Jun 2007
 US Public Domain

UNIT 8, LESSON 2

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

David Jones: Pusanhaeng pōsūp'yo
ōdisō samnikka?

Where do I buy tickets for
the bus to Pusan?

Passerby: Chōgi maep'yoguesō
sashipshio.

Buy them at the ticket
window over there.

David Jones: Ne. Kamsahamnida.

I see. Thank you.

* * *

David Jones: Pusankkaji yogūm
ōlmamnikka?

How much is the fare to
Pusan?

Ticket Agent: Och'ōngubaegwōnimnida.

It's 5,900 won.

David Jones: Tujang chushipshio.
Kūrōnde, taūm pōsū
myōtshie ch'ulbal
hamnikka?

Give me two tickets. By the
way, what time does the next
bus leave?

Ticket Agent: Yōlshi ishippune
ch'ulbal hamnida.

It leaves at 10:20.

David Jones: Kūrōm, myōtshie Pusane
toch'ak hamnikka?

Well then, what time does
it arrive in Pusan?

Ticket Agent: Ohu neshie toch'ak
hamnida.

It arrives at 4:00 p.m.

David Jones: Ne. Kamsahamnida.
Onū pōsūmnikka?

Okay. Thank you. Which bus
is it?

Ticket Agent: Chōgi tultchae pōsū-
mnida.

It's the second bus over
there.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Pusanhaeng is "Pusan" and -haeng, "bound" or "going to."

Ōdisō means "where" or "at what place."

Samnikka means "does one buy," as opposed to sagessūmnida, "I will buy." Sashipshio means "please buy."

Tujang is tu-, "two," and -jang, the counter used for tickets or sheets of paper.

Kūrōnde means "by the way" or "incidentally."

Ch'ulbal means "departure" and ch'ulbal hamnikka, "does it depart."

Toch'ak means "arrival" and toch'akhamnida, "it arrives."

Ōnū means "which" or "which one."



Ticket selling windows at the Incheon Bus Terminal

Photo: Kbarends
Date: 24 May 2008
cc-by-sa-3.0

EXERCISES

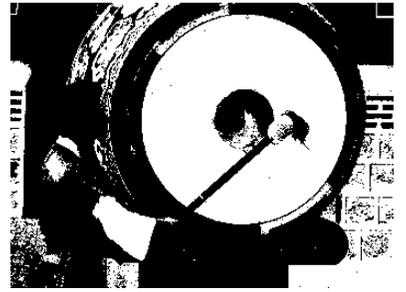


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Seoulhaeng pōsūp'yo yōgisō samnikka?

Do I buy bus tickets for Seoul here?

Ne. Imaep'yoguesō sashipshio.

Yes. Buy them at this ticket window.

Seoulkkaji myōtshigan kōllimnikka?

How many hours does it take [to get] to Seoul?

Hanshigan sashippun kōllimnida.

It takes an hour and 40 minutes.

Seoulhaeng p'yo nejang saya twemnida.

I have to buy four tickets to Seoul.

Nejange man yukch'ōnwōnimnida.

It's 16,000 won for four tickets.

Seoulhaeng myōtshie ch'ulbal hamnikka?

What time does the Seoul [bus] depart?

Seoure myōtshie toch'ak hamnikka?

What time does it arrive in Seoul?

Pusanhaeng ōnū pōsūmnikka?

Which one is the bus to Pusan?

Orūntchok tultchae pōsūmnida.

It's the second bus on the right.

NOTE: The combination Seoul and -e is pronounced Seoure. Also, remember that -imnikka and -imnida drop their first -i when they follow words ending in a vowel, as in pōsūmnida.

Exercise 2. Say in English.



Exercise 3. Say in Korean.



Where is the ticket window for the Pusan bus?

How much is the fare to Pusan?

What time does the bus arrive in Osan?

Is the bus leaving now?

What time does the next bus depart?

Exercise 4. Listening Comprehension.

- a. How many tickets does he want?
- b. Where can he buy a ticket to Seoul?
- c. What time does the bus arrive in Pusan?
- d. Which one is the bus to Osan?
- e. When does the next bus leave?

Exercise 5. Role Play.



- a. Ask how much the fare to Inch'ŏn is.
- b. Ask for two tickets. Then ask "By the way, what time does bus leave?"
- c. Ask how many hours it takes to get to Inch'ŏn.
- d. Ask which bus it is.

Exercise 6. Repetition.

Ch'ulbal haessūmnikka?

Did it leave? Has it
departed?

Ch'ulbal haessūmnida.

It left. It has departed.

Toch'ak haessūmnikka?

Did it arrive? Has it
arrived?

Toch'ak haessūmnida.

It arrived. It has arrived.

Ch'ulbal an haessūmnida.

It didn't leave. It hasn't
departed.

Toch'ak an haessūmnida.

It didn't arrive. It hasn't
arrived.

Exercise 7.

You hear: Pōsū ch'ulbal hamnida.

Say: Pōsū ch'ulbal haessūmnida.

Exercise 8.

You hear: Pōsū ch'ulbal haessūmnida.

Say: Pōsū ch'ulbal an haessūmnida.

Exercise 9. Repetition.

kosokpōsū	express bus
kich'a	train
kich'ap'yo	train ticket
yōlch'a	train
t'ūkkūp	express
t'ūkkūp yōlch'a	express train
Saemaūlho	the Saemaūl train, the super-express between Seoul and Pusan
t'ūkshil	first class on the Saemaūl train
t'ūkshilp'yo	first-class ticket
pot'ongshil	coach on the Saemaūl train

NOTE: Kich'a is the most common informal word for "train," while the more formal yōlch'a is used mostly as a part of names for different kinds of trains. The Saemaūl train, often referred to as "the Blue Train" by Americans, is the fastest train and is the most popular among U.S. personnel in Korea.

Exercise 10.

You hear: bus ticket

Say: Pōsūp'yo ōdisō samnikka?

express bus ticket

train ticket

Saemaūl ticket

first-class ticket

coach ticket

Exercise 11. Say in English. 

Exercise 12.

You hear: the bus to Pusan, when

Say: Pusanhaeng pōsū ōnje ch'ulbal hamnikka?

the express bus to Inch'ōn, when
 the bus to Tongdūch'ōn, what time
 the Saemaūl train, at ten o'clock
 the express train, right away

Exercise 13. 

You hear: Pōsū hanshie ch'ulbal hamnida.

Say: Pōsū myōtshie ch'ulbal hamnikka?

Exercise 14. Say in Korean. 

What time does the Saemaūl train leave?
 Has the Saemaūl train arrived?
 How much is the express bus fare to Osan?
 Please give me two coach tickets.
 Which one is the bus to Ūijōngbu?

Exercise 15. Role Play.



- a. Ask when the next Saemaül train leaves.
- b. Ask about the coach fare to Pusan.
- c. Ask for two tickets and give 36,000 won to the agent.
- d. Ask what time it arrives in Pusan.
- e. Say thank you.

Exercise 16. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Photo: watchmart
Date: 15 Apr 2007
cc-by-2.0

Bus station near Busan

David Jones: Pusanhaeng pōsūp'yo ōdisō samnikka?

Passerby: Chōgi maep'yoguesō saseyo.

David Jones: Ne. Kamsahamnida.

* * *

David Jones: Pusankkaji yogūm ōlmamnikka?

Ticket Agent: Och'ōngubaegwōnyeyo.

David Jones: Tujang chuseyo. Kūrōnde, taūm pōsū myōtshie ch'ulbal haeyo?

Ticket Agent: Yōlshi ishippune ch'ulbal haeyo.

David Jones: Kūrōm, myōtshie Pusane toch'ak haeyo?

Ticket Agent: Ohu neshie toch'ak haeyo.

David Jones: Ne. Kamsahamnida. Ōnū pōsūyeyo?

Ticket Agent: Chōgi tultchae pōsūyeyo.



Busan Central Bus Terminal

Photo: Park4223
 Date: 17 Apr 2010
 cc-by-sa-3.0

UNIT 8, LESSON 3

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coila
cc-by-sa-2.0

Mike Williams: Ōnū pōsū Tongdaemun
shijang kamnikka? Which bus goes to the
Tongdaemun Market?

Passerby: Tongdaemun shijangyo?
Paekshippōn t'ashipshio. The Tongdaemun Market?
Get on number 110.

Mike Williams: Ne. Kamsahamnida. Okay. Thank you.

Passerby: Ch'ōnmaneyo. You're welcome.

* * *

Mike Williams: Agassi! Uri Tongdaemun
shijangkkaji kamnida. Miss! We're going as
far as the Tongdaemun
Market.

Bus Girl: Kūrōm, setchaesō naeri-
shipshio. Then, get off at the
third [stop].

Mike Williams: Ne. Kamsahamnida. I see. Thank you.

* * *

- Storekeeper: Ōsō oshipshio. Come right in.
- Joan Clark: Ne. Posōkham igō
ōlmamnikka? Okay. How much is this
jewelry box?
- Storekeeper: Man yukch'ōnwōnimnida. It's 16,000 won.
- Joan Clark: Ne. Kūrōnde, "mother-
of-pearl" hangungmallo
mwōmnikka? I see. By the way,
what is "mother-of-
pearl" in Korean?
- Storekeeper: Chagaemnida. It's chagae.
- Joan Clark: A, chagaeyo? Algessūm-
nida. Ich'ōngja ōlmam-
nikka? Oh, chagae? I under-
stand. How much is
this celadon [vase]?
- Storekeeper: Iman sach'ōnwōnimnida. It's 24,000 won.
- Mike Williams: Aigu! Nōmu pissamnida. Oh, wow! That's too
Chom tō ssage hapshida. expensive. Let's make
it a little cheaper.
- Storekeeper: Ōlma chushigessūmnikka? How much will you give
me?
- Mike Williams: Imanwōne hapshida. Let's make it 20,000 won.
- Storekeeper: Kollanhamnida. Iman-
ich'ōnwōn chushipshio. I can't do that. Give
me 22,000 won.
- Joan Clark: Kūrōpshida. Kūrōm,
ich'ōngjahago chagae
posōkham chōgō chuship-
shio. All right. Then, give
me this celadon vase and
that mother-of-pearl
jewelry box.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

-pōn means "number." It is used after a number, just like a counter.

T'a- means "to board." It refers to getting on any means of transportation.

Aigu! is an exclamation meaning "Oh, wow!" "Oh, no!" or even "Ouch!"

Chushigessūmnikka means "will you give" or "would you give."

Ch'ōngja refers to either celadon porcelain or to items made from this light-green Korean porcelain.



Beach shops in Sokcho

Photo: Tim Walker
Date: 16 Aug 2008
cc-by-2.0

EXERCISES

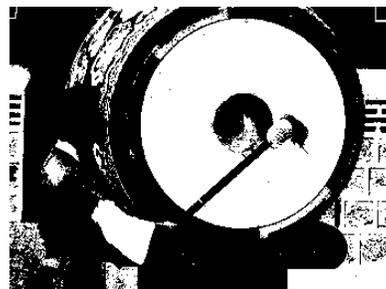


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Ōnū pōsū Seoul yōk kamnikka?

Which bus goes to the Seoul Railroad Station?

Ibaegoshippōn t'ashipshio.

Take the number 250 [bus].

Paeksamshippōn t'aya twemnida.

You have to take number 130.

T'aekshi t'aya twemnida.

You have to take a taxi.

Taūmesō naerishipshio.

Get off at the next [stop].

Chagae posōkham aju chossūmnida.

The mother-of-pearl jewelry box is very nice.

Imanwōn chushigessūmnikka?

Will you give me 20,000 won?

Ich'ōngja pyōllo an pissamnida.

This celadon [vase] is not really expensive.

Exercise 2. Listening Comprehension.

- a. Where is the express bus terminal?
- b. Where should they get off?
- c. What is he offering 40,000 won for?
- d. Which bus should he take?
- e. Which bus goes to the Tongdaemun Market?

Exercise 3. Say in English.



Exercise 4.

You hear: Tongdaemun Market

Say: Ōnū pōsū Tongdaemun shijang kamnikka?

Seoul Railroad Station

2nd Division

main gate of the post

Osan AFB

Exercise 5. Say in Korean. 

I have to take this bus.

We are going as far as the 2nd Division main gate.

What is "celadon" in Korean?

Let's make it a little cheaper.

Give me a jewelry box and a celadon vase.

Exercise 6. Role Play. 

- a. Ask which bus goes to Tongdŭch'ŏn.
- b. Say that you understand and then say, "Thank you."
- c. Tell the bus girl you are going as far as the main gate of the military installation.
- d. Say that you understand.

Exercise 7. Repetition.

notkūrūt	brass bowl
notchōpshi	brass plate
changgi settū	chess set
inhyōng	doll, figurine
kabang	bag, luggage
shilk'ū brausū	silk blouse

Exercise 8. Say in English. 

Exercise 9.

You hear: brass bowls
Say: Notkūrūt chom popshida.

this chess set

Korean dolls

red bags

that brass plate

blue silk blouses

Exercise 10. Say in Korean. 

Let's make this chess set 10,000 won.

Please give me four of these dolls.

Wow! That's too expensive. How about 8,000 won?

I'll buy the brass plate and the chess set.

Exercise 11. Repetition.

T'aya twemnida.

I have to take.

T'aya twemnikka?

Do I have to take?

Naeryōya twemnida.

I have to get off.

Naeryōya twemnikka?

Do I have to get off?

T'agessūmnida.

I'll take.

Naerigessūmnida.

I'll get off.

Exercise 12. 

You hear: Samnida.

Say: Saya twemnida.

Exercise 13. 

You hear: Kamnida.

Say: Kagessūmnida.

Exercise 14. Say in Korean. 

I have to take a taxi.

We must get off right here.

I'm going to buy a bag.

Don't buy this blouse. It's too big.

What kind of dolls do you like?

Exercise 15. Listening Comprehension.

- a. What does he want to look at?
- b. How much is he offering?
- c. Where does he have to get off?
- d. What did he buy?
- e. Which bus goes to Tongdūch'ōn?

Exercise 16.

You hear: Ne. Kagessūmnida.

Say: Kashigessūmnikka?

Exercise 17. Role Play.

- a. Say that you want to see some brass bowls and chess sets.
- b. Ask the price of a chess set that you are looking at.
- c. Say that it's too expensive. Then ask how much that brass bowl is.
- d. Say that the brass bowl is also too expensive.
- e. Offer 8,500 won.
- f. Give the money to him.

Exercise 18. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Mike Williams: Ōnū pōsū Tongdaemun shijang kayo?

Passerby: Tongdaemun shijangyo? Paekshippōn t'aseyo.

Mike Williams: Ne. Kamsahamnida.

Passerby: Ch'ōnmaneyo.

* * *

Mike Williams: Agassi! Uri Tongdaemun shijangkkaji kamnida.

Bus Girl: Kūrōm, setchaesō naeriseyo.

Mike Williams: Ne. Kamsahamnida.

* * *

Storekeeper: Ōsō oseyo.

Joan Clark: Ne. Posōkham igō ōlmayeyo?

Storekeeper: Man yukch'ōnwōnimnida.

Joan Clark: Ne. Kūrōnde, "mother-of-pearl" hangungmallo mwōyeyo?

Storekeeper: Chagaeyeyo.

Joan Clark: A, chagaeyo? Algessōyo. Ich'ōngja ōlmayeyo?

Storekeeper: Iman sach'ōnwōnyeyo.

Mike Williams: Aigu! Nōmu pissayo. Chom tō ssage hapshida.

Storekeeper: Ōlma chushigessōyo?

Mike Williams: Imanwōne hapshida.

Storekeeper: Kollanhamnida. Imanich'ōnwōn chuseyo.

Joan Clark: Kūrōpshida. Kūrōm, ich'ōngjahago chagae posōkham chōgō chuseyo.

UNIT 8, LESSON 4

CONVERSATION



Photo: Bridget Coilla
ce-by-sa-2.0

Mike Williams: Myōngdong kapshida. Take us to Myongdong.

Taxi Driver: Ne. Yes, sir.

* * *

Taxi Driver: Shillejiman, Excuse me, but are you
migukpunishimnikka? Americans?

Mike Williams: Kūrōssūmnida. That's right.

Taxi Driver: Hanguge ōnje oshyōss- When did you come to Korea?
ūmnikka?

Joan Clark: Changnyōne wassūmnida. I came last year.

Mike Williams: Chōnūn kūmnyōne I came this year.
wassūmnida.

Taxi Driver: Ne. Hanguk I see. What do you think
ōttōssūmnikka? of Korea?

Mike Williams: Aju chossūmnida. It's great. By the way,
Kūrōnde, Myōngdongesō what's a good Korean
ōnū hanguk ūmshikchōm restaurant in Myongdong?
chossūmnikka?

Taxi Driver: Hanilgwan yumyōng The Hanilgwan is famous.
hamnida.

Mike Williams: Ne. Kamsahamnida. I see. Thank you.

* * *

Waitress: Mwō hashigessūmnikka? What will you have?

Joan Clark: Chōnūn pibimpap hagessūmnida. I'll have pibimpap.

Mike Williams: Chōnūn pulgogi paekpan chushipshio. Kūrigo Crown maekchu tubyōng chushipshio. Give me a pulgogi dinner. And give us two bottles of Crown beer.

Waitress: Arassūmnida. All right.

* * *

Mike Williams: Agassi! Miss!

Waitress: Ne? Yes?

Mike Williams: Yōgi pulgogi irinbun tō chushipshio. Bring me one more order of pulgogi.

Waitress: Ne. Arassūmnida. All right.

NOTES ON THE CONVERSATION



Photo: Felix Andrews
cc-by-sa-3.0

Myōngdong is a shopping and entertainment district in downtown Seoul.

Migukpun means "American person." Remember that -pun, sometimes pronounced -bun, means "person."

Yumyōng means "famous."

EXERCISES

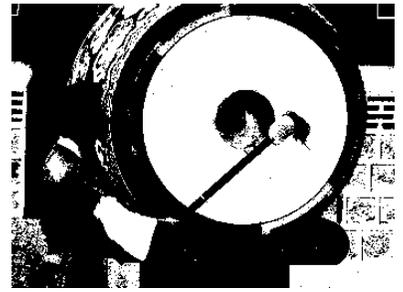


Photo: Dolmang / SJ Yang
cc-by-sa-2.0

Exercise 1. Repetition.

Tongdaemun shijang aju yumyōng hamnida.

The Tongdaemun Market is very famous.

Lotte hot'el yumyōng hamnikka?

Is the Lotte Hotel famous?

Ne. Shilla hot'eldo yumyōng hamnida.

Yes. The Shilla Hotel is famous too.

Hanguge kŭmnyōne oshyōssŭmnikka?

Did you come to Korea this year?

Aniyo. Changnyōn kuwōre wassŭmnida.

No. I came in September of last year.

Ōnje miguge kashigessŭmnikka?

When will you go to the United States?

Naenyōn p'arwōre kagessŭmnida.

I will go in August of next year.

Exercise 2.

You hear: Shilla Hotel, famous

Say: Shilla hot'el yomyōng hamnida.

kimchi, delicious

celadon porcelain, famous

Hanilgwan, small

Lotte Hotel, large

pulgogi, not hot

Exercise 3. Listening Comprehension.

- a. When did he come to Korea?
- b. Why doesn't he like the shoes?
- c. What does he want more of?
- d. How spicy is pibimpap?
- e. Where does he want to get off?

Exercise 4. Say in English.



Exercise 5. Say in Korean.

I'll get off in front of the coffee shop.

Is this restaurant famous?

By the way, where is the Naija Hotel?

Please give me a little more cream and sugar.

I'll have wonton soup today.

Exercise 6. Role Play.

- a. Ask him to take you to Myōngdong.
- b. Respond.
- c. Say that you came in October of last year.
- d. Say that you like it very much.
- e. Say that you'll get off in front of the department store.

Exercise 7. Review.

inyōnjōne	two years ago
samnyōnjōne	three years ago
ibōn chumare	this weekend
taūm chue	next week
taūm tare	next month
naeil ojōne	tomorrow morning
onūl ohue	this afternoon
ojōn ahopshi bane	at 9:30 a.m.
chōnyōk yōdōlshie	at 8:00 in the evening

Exercise 8. Say in Korean. 

I got married four years ago.

Are you busy this weekend?

I'm going to go at four o'clock this afternoon.

Let's go to the theater together next week.

What are you doing tomorrow evening?

Exercise 9. Review.

uri chipsaram

my wife

uri namp'yōn

my husband

uri aidūl

my/our children

adūlhago ttal

son and daughter

pumonim

parents

puin

someone else's wife
or any married woman

samonim

someone else's wife
or any married woman

Exercise 10. Say in Korean. 

My husband is an Air Force NCO.

How are your parents getting along?

Does your wife like American food too?

I have a son and two daughters.

My children also came along to Korea.

Exercise 11. Role Play.



- a. Greet him by name.
- b. Say, "Yes," and ask how his wife is getting along.
- c. Say that you don't have anything special to do.
- d. Agree with the suggestion and ask when.
- e. Say that you understand and then ask if his wife is also coming.
- f. Say that you'll see him Saturday then.

Exercise 12. Review.

tamnyo	blanket
ibul	quilt
panji	ring
mokkōri	necklace
kūm	gold
paekkūm	platinum
chigap	wallet
kabang	bag
inhyōng	doll
changgi settū	chess set

Exercise 13. Listening Comprehension.

- a. How much is he offering?
- b. Why doesn't he like the ring?
- c. What is the necklace made of?
- d. What is he looking for?
- e. How much do the doll and chess set cost?
- f. What color blanket does he want?

Exercise 14. Role Play.



- a. Say that you want to see some rings and necklaces.
- b. The storekeeper shows you a platinum ring. Ask what "platinum" is in Korean.
- c. Confirm what he said, say that you understand, and then ask the price.
- d. Ask if he has platinum necklaces also.
- e. Say that you won't buy the necklace, but ask him to give you the ring.

Exercise 15. *Conversation for Listening Comprehension*

Mike Williams: Myōngdong kapshida.

Taxi Driver: Ne.

* * *

Taxi Driver: Shillejiman, migukpuniseyo?

Mike Williams: Kūrōssūmnida.
 Taxi Driver: Hanguge ōnje oshyōssōyo?
 Joan Clark: Changnyōne wassōyo.
 Mike Williams: Chōnūn kūmnyōne wassūmnida.
 Taxi Driver: Ne. Hanguk ōttōsūmnikka?
 Mike Williams: Aju choayo. Kūrōnde, Myōngdongesō ōnū hanguk
 ūmshikchōm choayo?
 Taxi Driver: Hanilwan yumyōng haeyo.
 Mike Williams: Ne. Kamsahamnida.

* * *

Waitress: Mwō hashigessōyo?
 Joan Clark: Chōnūn pibimpap hagesōyo.
 Mike Williams: Chōnūn pulgogi paekpan chuseyo. Kūrigo Crown
 maekchu tubyōng chuseyo.
 Waitress: Arassūmnida.

* * *

Mike Williams: Agassi!
 Waitress: Ne?
 Mike Williams: Yōgi pulgogi irinbun tō chuseyo.
 Waitress: Ne. Arassōyo.

UNIT 8

SELF-EVALUATION QUIZ

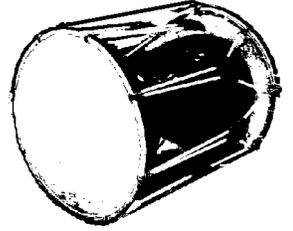


Photo: Visviva
Public Domain

Situation 1. You're Mike Williams. You're taking a taxi up to Osan Air Base to visit some friends.

- a. ON TAPE ONLY.
- b. Respond appropriately.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. Tell him you'll get out right next to the main gate.
- e. The driver lets you out next to the gate. Thank him.

Situation 2. You and a friend from Osan are going to take a bus from Songt'an to Seoul. You're at the bus terminal.

- a. Get the attention of a passerby and ask where to buy tickets for the bus to Seoul.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. Ask the ticket agent how much the fare is from Songt'an to Seoul.
- d. Ask for two tickets. Then ask when the bus leaves.
- e. She tells you the departure time. Now, ask what time the bus arrives.

Situation 3. You and your friend have arrived in Seoul, and you're looking for a place to eat.

- a. You've gotten a passerby's attention. Ask him, "What's a good Korean restaurant here?"
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. At the restaurant, order pibimpap for yourself and a kalbi dinner for your friend. And then say you want two bottles of O.B. beer.
- d. ON TAPE ONLY.
- e. Tell her that you came here last year.

Situation 4. You're David Jones. You and two friends are at the Seoul Railroad Station buying tickets for Pusan.

- a. Tell the ticket agent that you are all going as far as Pusan. Then ask how much first-class tickets cost.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. ON TAPE ONLY.
- d. Ask how long it takes to get from Seoul to Pusan.
- e. Ask her which train it is.

Situation 5. You and your two friends have arrived in Pusan and are doing some shopping downtown.

- a. You see some brassware in one of the shops. Ask the storekeeper what the bowl you're pointing at is called in Korean.
- b. ON TAPE ONLY.
- c. He gives you a price. Tell him it's too expensive, and suggest that he make it a little cheaper.
- d. ON TAPE ONLY.
- e. Ask him, "How about 7,500 won?"

UNIT 9

HANGUL (Optional)

Conso- nants Vowels	ㄱ	ㄴ	ㄷ	ㄹ	ㅁ	ㅂ	ㅅ	ㅇ	ㅈ	ㅊ	ㅋ	ㅌ	ㅍ	ㅎ
ㅏ	가	나	다	라	마	바	사	아	자	차	카	타	파	하
ㅑ	가	나	다	라	마	바	사	아	자	차	카	타	파	하
ㅓ	거	너	더	러	머	버	서	어	저	처	커	터	퍼	허
ㅕ	겨	녀	더	려	머	버	서	여	저	처	켜	터	퍼	허
ㅗ	고	노	도	로	모	보	소	오	조	초	코	토	포	호
ㅛ	교	뇨	도	료	묘	보	쇼	요	조	초	쿄	토	포	호
ㅜ	구	누	두	루	무	부	수	우	주	추	쿠	투	푸	후
ㅠ	규	뉴	두	류	뮤	뷰	슈	유	주	추	큐	투	푸	후
ㅡ	그	느	드	르	므	브	스	으	즈	츠	크	트	프	흐
ㅣ	기	니	디	리	미	비	시	이	지	치	키	티	피	히

UNIT 9

OBJECTIVES

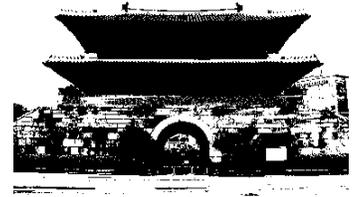


Photo: Gaël Chardon
cc-by-sa-2.0

The Korean people use two different writing systems: the most widely used today is a phonetic script called "Hangul"; the other, which is made up of Chinese characters, is called "Hanja." In this unit, you will only learn Hangul. Hangul is simple, systematic, and relatively easy to learn. Almost all public signs and billboards in Korea today are written exclusively in Hangul.

At the end of Unit 9, you will be able to:

1. Recognize Korean sounds and identify the corresponding written symbols when short words and phrases are pronounced distinctly several times at slow-normal speed.
2. Read short Korean words and phrases written in Hangul.
3. Write short Korean words and phrases in Hangul.



Hangul signs

Photo: mendhak
Date: 17 Mar 2010
cc-by-sa-2.0

UNIT 9, LESSON 1

	Hangul	Romanized
Vowel 1:	아	a
Vowel 2:	어	ō
Vowel 3:	오	o
Vowel 4:	우	u
Vowel 5:	으	ū
Vowel 6:	이	i

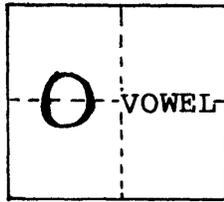
"Hangul" is "phonetic" writing, like English, in the sense that the symbols represent sounds, that is, consonants and vowels. Unlike English symbols, which are grouped directly into words, (e.g., E+n+g+l+i+s+h=English), Korean symbols are first grouped by SYLLABLE (e.g., H+a+n g+u+l=Han gul).

HOW KOREAN SYMBOLS ARE GROUPED

Korean symbols are written in syllable groupings. The simplest syllable is written with one consonant and one vowel.

When you write the symbol for a vowel alone, you must add the consonant symbol 0 which indicates in this case the absence of a consonant. Each of the six vowels on this page is a combination of the "zero" consonant and a vowel.

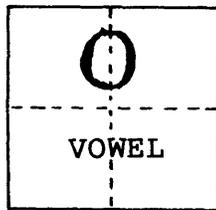
There are two types of arrangements for vowel symbols. The particular vowel being written determines which arrangement is used.

Side-by-Side Arrangement

Vowel 1: 아

Vowel 2: 어

Vowel 6: 이

Top-to-Bottom Arrangement

Vowel 3: 오

Vowel 4: 우

Vowel 5: 으

Note that (1) each part of the syllable should be equally divided between two smaller squares and (2) each part should be about the same size.

Writing Practice

Each Korean symbol is made up of a definite number of strokes written in a prescribed sequence called "stroke order." It is important to write symbols in the correct stroke order. Observe the following general rules:

- Rule 1: The symbol for a consonant which begins a syllable must be written before the vowel symbol; for example, \bigcirc before \uparrow to form $\bigcirc\uparrow$.
- Rule 2: The movement of each stroke must be from LEFT TO RIGHT ($--\rightarrow$) or TOP TO BOTTOM (\downarrow).
- Rule 3: If a symbol involves more than one stroke (like \uparrow or \perp), the movement should again be LEFT TO RIGHT ($|$ and then $-$ to form \uparrow) or TOP TO BOTTOM ($|$ and then $-$ to form \perp).

How to write the zero consonant symbol:



Follow the stroke orders shown to write each of the following syllables three times, in the spaces provided.

	1	2	3			
o						
o						
o						

	1	2	3			
o						
o						
o						

INTRODUCTION OF THREE CONSONANTS

Now you need to learn the consonant symbols. The symbol for a consonant is placed at the beginning of a syllable where the symbol ㅊ is found in 아, 어, 오, 우, 으 and 이. A consonant symbol is always accompanied by a vowel symbol.

1st consonant: k



The first consonant in traditional Hangeul sequence is a k-like sound, as in 가, 거, 고큐, ㄱ, ㄱ and ㄱ. It is pronounced like "c" in "cool" or "k" in "kiss," but this sound is not accompanied by a heavy puff of air.

How to write it: There is only one stroke, moving from left to right and then down. For each of the two ways of arranging a consonant symbol changes its shape slightly.



When it is placed to the left of a vowel, the downward portion is slanted: ㄱ. As you pronounce the following syllable, practice writing it in the boxes provided.

ka

ㄱ									
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

When the consonant symbol is placed on top of the vowel, the downward portion becomes straight: ㄱ. As you pronounce the following syllable, practice writing it in the boxes provided.

ko

ㄱ									
---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Write the following syllables.

가										
기										
구										
그										

2nd consonant: n



The second consonant in Hangul is pronounced like "n" in "nature."

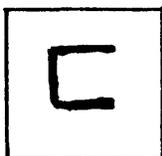
How to write it: The movement is from top to bottom and then to the right. The shape of the symbol does not change, regardless of its placement with a vowel.



Write the following syllables.

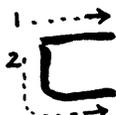
ᄒ							
ᄒ							
ᄒ							
ᄒ							
ᄒ							
ᄒ							

3rd consonant: t



The third consonant in Hangul is pronounced like "t" in "tall," but, unlike English, it is not accompanied by a heavy puff of air, and, again unlike English, the tip of the tongue touches the back of the upper teeth. Note that for an English "t" the tip of the tongue is farther back, touching the gum ridge.

How to write it: This symbol is written with two strokes. Its shape does not change, regardless of its placement with a vowel.



Reading and Writing Practice

Read each syllable aloud and then write it three times.

가				
너				
오				
누				
고				
디				

INTRODUCTION OF TWO MORE VOWELS

There are eight vowels in Korean. We have covered six: 아, 어, 오, 우, 으, 이. The two new ones are 애 and ऐ.

애

ae

ऐ

e

Each of these vowels was derived from the combination of two vowels:

아 + 이 → 애

어 + 이 → ऐ

How to write them: As usual, move from left to right. Each vowel symbol is written with three strokes.



Note the different lengths of the two downward strokes in each vowel symbol; the downward stroke on the left is slightly shorter.



Writing Practice: Follow the stroke order shown to write the two new vowels.

Stroke Order

	1	2	3	4				
애								
에								

INTRODUCTION OF FIVE MORE CONSONANTS

4th consonant: ㄹ or ㄺ



This is pronounced like "r" in "through" when it is at the beginning of a word or between two vowels. When it is placed at the end of the word, it is pronounced like "l" in "like."

How to write it: This symbol is written with three strokes.

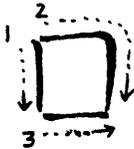


5th consonant: m



The fifth consonant in Hangul is pronounced like "m" in "map."

How to write it: This symbol is written with three strokes. Note that the little box formed is narrower at the bottom.



Write the following syllables.

ㅁ								
ㅁㅏ								
ㅁㅑ								
ㅁㅓ								
ㅁㅕ								
ㅁㅗ								
ㅁㅛ								
ㅁㅜ								
ㅁㅠ								

6th consonant: p or b

The sixth consonant in Hangul is pronounced like "p" in "pen." Unlike the English "p," the Korean ㅍ is not accompanied by a heavy puff of air. (See notes on ㅏ and ㅑ) When ㅍ is located between two vowels, it is pronounced like "b" in "boy."

How to write it: This symbol is written with four strokes.



Write the following syllables.

ㅍ								
ㅍ								
ㅍ								
ㅍ								
ㅍ								
ㅍ								
ㅍ								
ㅍ								

7th consonant: s or sh



The seventh consonant in Hangeul is pronounced like "s" in "sun," but before i it is pronounced like "sh" in "she."

How to write it: This symbol is written with two strokes.



Write the following syllables.

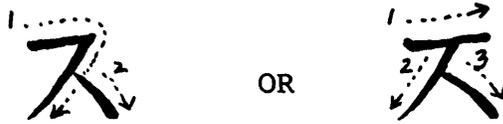
사								
새								
서								
세								
소								
수								
스								
시								

8th consonant: ch or j



In the traditional sequence of consonants, the ninth consonant is pronounced like "ch" in "child." Unlike the English "ch," ㄷ is not accompanied by a puff of air. It is pronounced like "j" in "measure" when it is placed between two vowels.

How to write it: This symbol is written with two or three strokes.



Write the following syllables.

자							
재							
저							
제							
조							
주							
즈							
지							

Reading and Writing Practice

A. Read the following syllables aloud as you write them in the boxes provided.

마				
새				
보				
네				
구				

대				
제				
로				
머				
슈				

B. Read the following words aloud as you write them in the boxes provided.

사과

--	--

--	--

--	--

--	--

apple

버스

--	--

--	--

--	--

--	--

bus

아주

--	--

--	--

--	--

--	--

very

모두

--	--

--	--

--	--

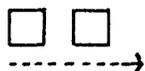
--	--

all

HOW TO WRITE WORDS

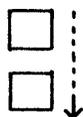
So far you have learned how to write single syllables. Words are formed by putting syllables together in either of the following arrangements.

LEFT TO RIGHT (as in English)



모	자	hat
우	리	we, our, my

TOP TO BOTTOM (traditional)



우	모
리	자

Read the following Korean words aloud. (These are presented only as examples of how Korean words are formed and not as required vocabulary.)

Words in the Western Style of Writing

- | | | | |
|-------|-----------|-------|-------|
| 1. 바다 | sea | 2. 모자 | hat |
| 3. 가구 | furniture | 4. 구두 | shoes |
| 5. 아이 | child | 6. 아기 | baby |

Words in the Traditional Style of Writing

- | | | | | | |
|--------|------|------|------|--------|--------|
| 어 6. | 지 5. | 나 4. | 나 3. | 아 2. | 다 1. |
| 머 | 도 | 무 | 이 | 버 | 리 |
| 니 | | | | 지 | |
| mother | map | tree | age | father | bridge |

Notice that in the traditional style of writing (from top to bottom) items are numbered from right to left.

UNIT 9, LESSON 2

INTRODUCTION OF Y VOWELS

Six of the eight vowels you have learned may be preceded by a y-like sound. Thus six new vowels--y vowels-- are formed. (으 and 이 do not have y-vowel counterparts.)

야	얘	여	예	요	유
<u>ya</u>	<u>yae</u>	<u>yŏ</u>	<u>ye</u>	<u>yo</u>	<u>yu</u>

As you see, the y-like beginning of these vowels is indicated in writing by an additional short stroke. Compare the symbols for each simple vowel and the corresponding y vowel while listening to the difference in pronunciation.

아	애	어	예	오	우	으	이
야	얘	여	예	요	유	/	/

Read the following words containing y vowels aloud.

- | | |
|-------|---------|
| 1. 요새 | 4. 유티 |
| 2. 여기 | 5. 자유 |
| 3. 얘기 | 6. 여보세요 |

CONSONANTS AT THE END OF A SYLLABLE

So far, all the syllables you have learned end with a vowel, but a syllable may end with a consonant also. The consonants ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅇ and ㅈ may be used as syllable-final consonants.

A syllable-final consonant is written directly below the initial consonant and vowel of a syllable:



(C = consonant; V = vowel)

Try to make written syllables the same size, regardless of whether they contain two or three symbols.

Change of Sound as a Syllable-final Consonant: Placed at the end of a syllable, a consonant may sound different than it does at the beginning of a syllable.

The zero consonant (ㅇ) is pronounced ng at the end of a syllable. Listen to the syllables and write them in the spaces provided.

강 ㅇ			스 ㅇ			영 ㅇ		
동 ㅇ			오 ㅇ			부 ㅇ		

ㄹ at the end of a syllable is pronounced like "l" in "like," but with the tip of the tongue pressed hard against the gum ridge. Read the syllables aloud as you write them in the spaces provided.

달 ㄹ			돌 ㄹ			불 ㄹ		
여 ㄹ			실 ㄹ			너 ㄹ		

ㄱ, ㅂ, ㄷ, ㄴ and ㄹ in syllable-final positions are not released.

WHAT DOES "RELEASING" MEAN? When pronouncing words such as "tip," "book," and "but," you end the words by closing your mouth. You may then either open your mouth with a puff of air or keep your mouth closed. You are "releasing" a consonant if a puff of air follows. If your mouth remains closed, the consonant is "unreleased."

Read the syllables aloud as you write them in the boxes provided.

벽 ㄱ			지 ㅂ			육 ㄷ		
상 ㄱ			우 ㅂ			만 ㄷ		

You might ask, "How do you pronounce ㄴ and ㄹ without releasing air?" You really cannot. This means that ㄴ and ㄹ at the end of written syllables are pronounced like ㄷ. Read the syllables aloud as you write them in the boxes provided.

곳 ㄷ			빛 ㄷ			곧 ㄷ		
갓 ㄷ			낫 ㄷ			숫 ㄷ		

How do you know how to spell words ending in t? When you hear kot, for example, there is no way of knowing by sound alone which of the three possible spellings, 곳, 곧 or 곶 is correct unless you already know the correct spellings of the individual words. In these examples, 곳 means "place," 곧 "soon," and 곶 "cape."

ㄴ and ㅈ do not change at the end of a syllable. Read aloud and write:

산			돈			감		
손			섬			문		

Reading and Writing Practice

Read the following words aloud as you write them in the boxes provided. (You are not required to remember the English.)

1.

문					
---	--	--	--	--	--

door

2.

맛					
---	--	--	--	--	--

taste

3.

곧					
---	--	--	--	--	--

soon

4.

빚					
---	--	--	--	--	--

debt

5.

집					
---	--	--	--	--	--

house

6.

종	이				
---	---	--	--	--	--

paper

7.

불					
---	--	--	--	--	--

fire

8.

감	자				
---	---	--	--	--	--

potato

9.

벽					
---	--	--	--	--	--

wall

10.

양	복				
---	---	--	--	--	--

man's suit

11.

강					
---	--	--	--	--	--

river

12.

언	제				
---	---	--	--	--	--

when

INTRODUCTION OF ASPIRATED CONSONANTS

There are consonants in Korean that, like the English "p," "t," "ch," and "k," are accompanied by a strong puff of air. These Korean consonants are referred to as "aspirated" consonants. The symbols for them are modifications of the symbols for unaspirated consonants:

10th consonant: ch'



The tenth Hangul consonant in the traditional sequence of consonants is pronounced like "ch" in "chin" and "church," but is followed by a strong puff of air.

How to write it: Note that it is the symbol ㄷ written with one additional stroke (stroke 1).



OR



Write the following syllables.

차									
초									
책									
춘									
칠									
처									

11th consonant: k'



The eleventh Hangeul consonant is pronounced like "c" in "cat" or "k" in "kick," with a heavy puff of air.

How to write it: 7 with an additional stroke (stroke 2).



Write the following syllables.

카									
크									
코									
켜									
콩									
칼									
캐									

12th consonant: t'



The twelfth Hangul consonant, ㄷ, is fully aspirated and is pronounced like "t" in "tin" and "top."

OR



How to write it: ㄷ with one additional stroke.



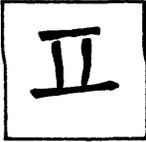
OR



Write the following syllables.

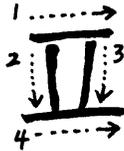
타									
투									
티									
투									
투									
투									
투									

13th consonant: p'



The thirteenth Hangul consonant is pronounced like "p" in "park," but with a stronger puff of air.

How to write it: This symbol is written with four strokes.



Write the following syllables.

파									
포									
핑									
푼									
팻									
파	리								
포	병								
푼	선								

14th consonant: h



The fourteenth and last consonant in Hangul is pronounced like "h" in "half" and "have." When ㅇ precedes ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅌ, or ㅈ, it causes them to sound like ㅋ, ㅌ, ㆁ, or ㅉ.

How to write it: This symbol is written with three strokes.



Write the following syllables.

ㅇㅏ						
ㅇㅑ						
ㅇㅓ						
ㅇㅕ						
ㅇㅗ						
ㅇㅛ						

Reading and Writing Practice

Read the following words aloud as you write them in the boxes provided. (You are not required to remember the English.)

첩	보						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

intelligence (report)

포	병						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

artillery man

총	장						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

president (university)

특	전						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

privilege

탈	주						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

desertion

크	다						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

big

한	국						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

Korea

허	가						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

permit

UNIT 9, LESSON 3

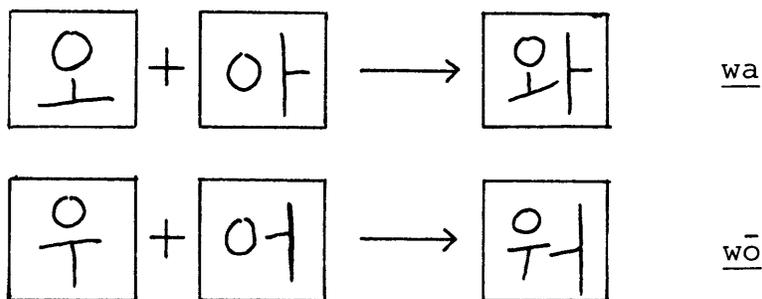
INTRODUCTION OF W VOWELS

You learned that six vowels may be preceded by a y-like sound. These y vowels are 야, 애, 여, 예, 요, and 유.

There are six vowels that are preceded by a w-like sound. These w vowels are 와, 위, 외, 휘, 왜, and 웨. Each is formed by combining two vowel symbols.

The w vowels 와, 위, 휘, and 외 will be introduced in this lesson.

As you see below, 와 and 위 are formed by combining two vowel symbols together as follows:



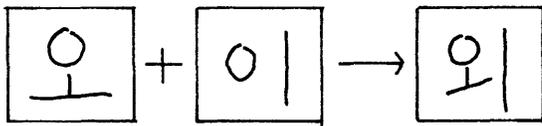
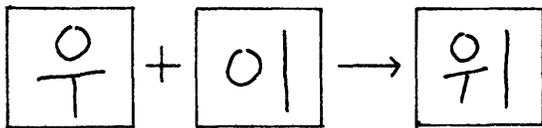
NOTE: You cannot make the combinations 외 and 휘. The w sound before 아 and 애 is written as 오 and as 우 before 어 and 에.

Read each syllable aloud as you write it.

와				
과				
노				
보				
소				
화				

위				
귀				
무				
쥬				
튀				
휘				

위 and 외 are also formed by combining two vowel symbols together, as follows.



PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

wi: like "wee" in "week"

we: like w + 어 or sometimes w + 애.

Write the following syllables.

위				
귀				
쥬				
휘				

외				
튀				
뽀				
트				

Reading and Writing Practice

Read the following words aloud as you write them in the boxes provided. (You are not required to remember the English.)

되	다								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

to become

권	위								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

authority

전	화								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

telephone

지	뢰								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

(ground) mine

최	고								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

the best

조	화								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

harmony

병	원								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

hospital

대	위								
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

captain

POSITION OF CONSONANTS IN SPELLING

The Korean word for "soldier" is pronounced kunin and spelled

군	인
---	---

but not

구	닌
---	---

The position of the consonant in the middle of the word, in this case ㄴ, is important in spelling. How do you know which syllable it belongs to?

There are two basic principles of Hangul spelling, or the grouping of symbols into syllables:

Rule 1: Words consisting of two or more syllables are grouped so that their meaningful components are in separate syllables.

For example, the word for 군인 is spelled 군 plus 인 because it has two meaningful components: 군 = military and 인 = person.

CAUTION: This does not mean, however, that the word is pronounced like 구 plus 인. It is still pronounced 군인.

You might feel that you have no way of knowing the proper grouping until you are told. Exactly! You have to learn the proper grouping when you are first introduced to a word. There is no other way.

Rule 2: If a word has no smaller meaningful components, the sounds are "evenly grouped" into syllables.

"Evenly grouped" means that a consonant in the middle of a word is placed at the beginning of the second syllable rather than at the end of the first. For example,

누구 is spelled

누	구
---	---

and not

눅	우
---	---

HOW ABOUT A NOUN AND ITS SUFFIX? According to the spelling rule 1 on the previous page, a suffix (-이 or -에) is a meaningful element distinct from the noun to which it is attached. Therefore, a suffix is written as a separate unit (as in 책이 and 미국에), even though a suffix is always pronounced as part of the noun. Compare the following pronunciations and spellings.

PRONOUNCED	SPELLED	
지 베	집 에	at home
미 구 기	미 국 이	America (<u>subject</u>)
서 우 례	서 울 예	to/in Seoul

SYLLABLES ENDING IN ㅇ : Any consonant may come in the middle of a word, and therefore the position of such a consonant may be either at the end of the first syllable or at the beginning of the second syllable. Right? Wrong. There is one exception to the above: ㅇ (ng).

The symbol ㅇ can stand for the consonant sound ng only at the end of a syllable. Therefore, to spell the ng sound in the middle of a two-syllable word, ㅇ must be placed with the first syllable.

So far, you have learned only one word that contains ㅇ in the middle: 종 이 . Practice writing the word in the spaces provided.

종 이

WHAT TO DO WITH TWO CONSONANTS IN THE MIDDLE OF A WORD: Many Korean words have two consonants in the middle. Read the following words.

출판, 전화, 학교, 병사, 남자, 학생, 선생, 양복

As you see by the spellings, the two middle consonants in each word are split between two syllables--one consonant at the end of the first syllable and the other at the beginning of the second.

Occasionally, however, two consonants in the middle of a word are written together, in the same syllable, if they both belong to one part of the word. The existence verb **있읍니다** and its negative **없읍니다** are two such examples. Both **ㅅ** and **ㅃ** belong to the stem portions of the verbs:

STEM	+	ENDING	
있	+	읍니다	There is
없	+	읍니다	There isn't

Write these verbs in the spaces provided.

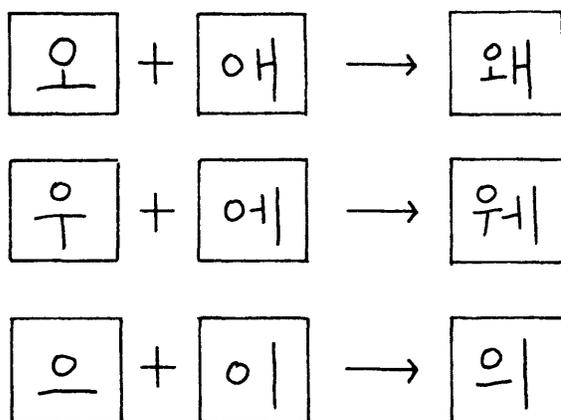
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> </div>
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> </div>

WHAT ABOUT OTHER VERBS? Sometimes it is impossible to write the stem and the ending in separate syllables, although they are separate meaningful elements. We have already seen examples in 갑니다 ("go") and 옵니다 ("come"). Whenever a verb stem ends with a vowel, a part of the polite form ending ㅁ is placed below the stem. Practice writing these verbs in the spaces provided.

갑니다	<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr></table>				<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr></table>				<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr></table>			
옵니다	<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr></table>				<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr></table>				<table border="1" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"><tr><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td><td style="width: 20px; height: 20px;"></td></tr></table>			

INTRODUCTION OF MORE W VOWELS

Earlier you learned that w vowels 와, 워, 위, and 외 are combinations of two vowels. The other three w vowels are also combinations:



PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

wae: w + 애

we: w + 예

ui:

This w vowel usually retains the sounds of 으 and 이. In casual speech, 으 is very short and often not audible.

NOTE: 의 is the only w vowel that combines 으 and another vowel.

ARE TWO DIFFERENT KOREAN WRITTEN SYLLABLES PRONOUNCED THE SAME? Yes. Although most written syllables have one unique pronunciation, 왜 and 워 are pronounced the same.

HOW DO YOU KNOW WHICH WAY TO SPELL THE SOUND? Speaking of the sound alone, there is no way for you to know which way to spell it: 왜 or 워. You have to learn which spelling is used for a particular word--in the same way that you learned the different spellings for "right" and "write."

ISN'T THERE SOME KIND OF CLUE? No, but in nine out of ten cases, the sound is spelled 의 rather than 워. Therefore, your chance of being correct is very good if you spell 의 when you hear the sound w + 예.

Reading and Writing Practice

Read the following words aloud as you write them in the boxes provided. (You are not required to remember the English.)

왜				
---	--	--	--	--

why

궤				
---	--	--	--	--

box

외	국						
---	---	--	--	--	--	--	--

foreign nation

웨	이	터				
---	---	---	--	--	--	--

waiter

의	자					
---	---	--	--	--	--	--

chair

괭	이					
---	---	--	--	--	--	--

hoe

지	뢰					
---	---	--	--	--	--	--

land mine

정	의					
---	---	--	--	--	--	--

justice

INTRODUCTION OF "DOUBLE" CONSONANTS

You have learned the 14 Korean consonants included in traditional dictionary sequence. Five more consonants will be introduced here. These five "double" consonants are represented by double symbols: ㄱ, ㄲ, ㅃ, ㅄ, and ㅅ.

The double consonants are pronounced by holding your mouth tense and then suddenly releasing the sound without aspiration (that is, without a puff of air accompanying it.)

WHAT ARE THE CLOSEST ENGLISH SOUNDS? No consonants at the beginning of an English word are pronounced like Korean double consonants. However, when "t," "p" and "k" come after "s," they do not have aspiration and therefore sound similar to the Korean double consonants ㄱ, ㄲ and ㅃ.

AREN'T THE DOUBLE CONSONANTS SOMEWHAT LIKE "G," "D," AND "B"? Yes, they are often heard as "g," "d," and "b" by English speakers. Conversely, Korean speakers occasionally transcribe English words beginning in "g," "d," and "b" with the corresponding double consonants. For example, "gas" would be spelled 깨스.

WHAT EXACTLY IS THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN ㄱ AND ㄲ? The difference between ㄱ and ㄲ (and also between ㅅ and ㅆ) is a very fine one since they are both sounds made by air friction at a narrow gap behind the gum ridge. The puff of air doesn't play much of a role in differentiating them.

One way to learn how to pronounce the "double" consonants is by exaggerating the sounds.

Reading Practice

Read the following words aloud.

- | | |
|--------|---------|
| 1. 칠판 | 2. 연필 |
| 3. 지금 | 4. 한국 |
| 5. 볼펜 | 6. 수첩 |
| 7. 비행장 | 8. 유리창 |
| 9. 타자기 | 10. 자동차 |

K E Y S

UNIT 1, LESSON 1

Exercise 2

(Chal chinaemnida.)
I'm getting along fine.

(Pyōllo an pappūmnida.)
I'm not really busy.

(taewinim)
captain

(ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?)
How are you getting along?

(Annyōnghashimnikka?)
Hello.

(Harris sōnsaengnim)
Mr. Harris

Exercise 3

Harris taewinim, annyōnghashimnikka?

Kim sōnsaengnim, yosae pappūshimnikka?

Pyōllo an pappūmnida.

Kim sōnsaengnim, ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?

Chal chinaemnida.

Harris taweinim, oraeganmanimnida.

Exercise 5

(Yi taeryōngnim)
COL Yi

(Kim sowinim)
2LT Kim

(Clark chungwinim)
1LT Clark

(Taylor sorryōngnim)
MAJ Taylor

(Smith chungryōngnim)
LTC Smith

(Jones chunwinim)
WO Jones

Exercise 6

Smith sorryōngnim

Clark taewinim

Yi chunwinim

Yi chungwinim

Pak sowinim

UNIT 1, LESSON 2

Exercise 2

(Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida.)
Pleased to meet you.

(Ibuni Kim sōnsaengnimimnida.)
This is Mr. Kim.

(Kim Sang-Jinimnida.)
I'm Kim Sang-Jin.

(Che ch'ingu sogae hamnida.)
Let me introduce my friend.

(Ibuni Williams pyōngjangimnida.)
This is SGT Williams.

(Yosae pappūshimnikka?)
Are you busy these days?

(Kūjō kūrōssūmnida.)
So-so.

Exercise 3

Kim Sang-Jinimnida.

Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida.

Che chingu sogae hamnida.

Yosae pappūshimnikka?

Kūjō kūrōssūmnida.

Ibuni Smith pyōngjangimnida.

Exercise 5

(Pak sangbyōng)
SP4 Pak

(misūt'ō Yi)
Mr. Yi

(Kim ibyōng)
PV2 Kim

(misū Chang)
Miss Chang

(Ch'we sōnsaeng)
Mr. Ch'we

(Kim ilbyōng)
PFC Kim

(Pak pyōngjang)
SGT Pak

Exercise 6

Pak ilbyōng

misū Yi

Jones sangbyōng

Ch'we ibyōng

Chang pyōngjang

Exercise 9

(Chinaeshimnikka?)
Chinaemnida.

(Chal chinaeshimnikka?)
Chal chinaemnida.

(Pappūshimnikka?)
Pappūmnida.

(Yosae pappūshimnikka?)
Yosae pappūmnida.

Exercise 12

- a. Kim sōnsaengnim, annyōnghashimnikka?
- b. (Ne. Annyōnghashimnikka?)
Oraeganmanimnida.
- c. (Ne. Oraeganmanimnida.)
Ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?
- d. (Chal chinaemnida. Ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?)
Chal chinaemnida. Che ch'ingu sogaehamnida. Ibuni
Williams pyōngjangimnida.

UNIT 1, LESSON 3

Exercise 2

(Ne. Yukkumnimnida.)
Yes. I am in the Army.

(Ne. kuninimnida.)
Yes. I am in the military.

(Aniyo. Chōnūn minganinimnida.)
No. I am a civilian.

(Shillejiman, kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?)
Excuse me, but are you married?

(Ne. Algessūmnida.)
I see.

(A, kūrōssūmnikka?)
Oh, is that so?

Exercise 3

Shillejiman, yukkunishimnikka?

Ajik mihonimnida.

Ne. Minganinimnida.

A, kūrōssūmnikka?

Kuninishimnikka?

Exercise 5

(Changgyoishimnikka?)
Are you an officer?

(Hasagwanimnida.)
I am an NCO.

(Yukkun changgyoimnida.)
I am an Army officer.

(Haegunimnida.)
I am in the Navy.

(Konggun hasagwanishimnikka?)
Are you an Air Force NCO?

(Haebyōngimnida.)
I am in the Marine Corps.

Exercise 6

Yukkun hasagwanimnida.

Haebyōngimnida.

Konggunishimnikka?

Changgyoishimnikka?

Haegun changgyoishimnida.

Exercise 7

(Haegun changgyoishimnikka?)
Ne. Haegun changgyoimnida.

(Haebyōngishimnikka?)
Ne. Haebyōngimnida.

(Hasagwanishimnikka?)
Ne. Hasagwanimnida.

(Konggun changgyoishimnikka?)
Ne. Konggun changgyoimnida.

Exercise 9

(Kim hasanim, yukkunishimnikka?)
SSG Kim, are you in the Army?

(Ibuni chungsaumnida.)
This person is a sergeant first class.

(Chuimsangsanim, annyōng hashimnikka?)
Hello, sergeant major.

(Pak sōnsangsanim, yosae pappūshimnikka?)
MSG Pak, are you busy these days?

(Che ch'ingu haegun hasagwanimnida.)
My friend is a Navy petty officer.

Exercise 10

Konggun changgyoishimnikka?

Aniyo. Haegun changgyoimnida.

Chungsaishimnikka?

Aniyo. Sangsaimnida.

Haebyōng hasaimnida.

Exercise 17

- a. (Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida. Kim Sang-Jinimnida.)
Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida. Williams pyōngjangimnida.
- b. (Ne. Yukkunishimnikka?)
Aniyo. Chōnūn konggunimnida.
- c. (Chōnūn minganinimnida. Shillejiman, kyōlhon
hashyōssūmnikka?)
Ajik mihonimnida. Kim sōnsaengnim, kyōlhon
hashyōssūmnikka?
(Mullonimnida.)

UNIT 1, LESSON 4

Exercise 2

(Kim sōnsaengnim, tto pwepkessūmnida.)
I'll see you again, Mr. Kim.

(Pak taewinim, annyōngghi kyeshipshio.)
Good-bye, CPT Pak.

(Chōnūn kagessūmnida.)
I am going to go.

(Yi pyōngjangnim, annyōngghi kashishio.)
Good-bye, SGT Yi.

(Chom pappūmnida.)
I am a little busy.

(Cho soryōngnim, pappūshimnikka?)
Are you busy, MAJ Cho?

Exercise 3

Annyōngghi kyeshipshio.

Kūrōm, annyōngghi kashipshio.

Kagessūmnida. OR Chōnūn kagessūmnida.

Kūrōm, tto pwepkessūmnida.

Chom pappūmnida.

Waeyo?

Exercise 5

(Ittaga kagessūmnida.)
I'll go later. OR I'm going to go later.

(Naeil chom pappūmnida.)
I'm a little busy tomorrow.

(Taūm tare kashipshio.)
Please go next month.

(Ittaga tto pwepkessūmnida.)
I'll see you again later.

(Taūm chue pappūshimnikka?)
Are you busy next week?

Exercise 6

Ittaga kashipshio.

Taūm tare pappūshimnikka?

Taūm chue chom pappūmnida.

Naeil kagessūmnida.

Naeil tto pwepkessūmnida.

Exercise 8

(Kagessūmnida.)
An kagessūmnida.

(Yosae pappūmnida.)
Yosae an pappūmnida.

(Kūrōm, chōnūn kagessūmnida.)
Kūrōm, chōnūn an kagessūmnida.

(Pappūmnida.)
An pappūmnida.

Exercise 13

Oraeganmanimnida.

Öttök'e chinaeshimnikka?

Che ch'ingu sogae hamnida.

Ch'öm pwepsūmnida.

Yukkunishimnikka?

Kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?

Kuninishimnikka?

Chōnūn minganinimnida. OR Minganinimnida.

Exercise 14

- a. (Jones sangbyōngnim, yosae öttök'e chinaeshimnikka?)
Kūjō kūrōssūmnida. Kim sōnsaengnim, pappūshimnikka?
- b. (Pyōllo an pappūmnida.)
Kūrōm kagessūmnida.
- c. (Waeyo? Yosae pappūshimnikka?)
Ne. Chom pappūmnida.
- d. (Kūrōm, tto pwepkessūmnida. Annyōngghi kashipshio.)
Annyōngghi kyeshipshio.

Exercise 15

David Jones: Well, I'm going to go.

Mr. Kim: Why? Are you busy?

David Jones: Yes. I'm a little busy these days.

Mr. Kim: Oh, is that so? I see. Well, I'll see you again.
Good-bye.

David Jones: Good-bye. I'll see you again next week.

Unit 1 Self-evaluation Quiz

1. a. Yi chungsanim, annyōnghashimnikka?
 b. (Ne. annyōnghashimnikka? Ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?)
 Hello. How are you getting along?
 c. Chal chinaemnida.
 d. (Yosae pappūshimnikka?)
 Are you busy these days?

2. a. Yi chungsanim, konggun hasagwanishimnikka?
 b. (Aniyo. Yukkun hasagwanimnida.)
 No. I'm an Army NCO.
 c. Shillejiman, kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?

3. a. Che ch'ingu sogae hamnida. Ibuni Brown taewimnida.
 b. Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida. Brown taewimnida.

4. a. Pak soryōngnim, yukkun changgyoishimnikka?
 b. (Aniyo. Haebyōng changgyomnida.)
 No. I'm a Marine Corps officer.
 c. (Shillejiman, kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?)
 Excuse me, but are you married?
 d. Mullonimnida. OR Ajik mihonimnida.

5. a. Kūrōm, kagessūmnida.
 b. (Waeyo? Pappūshimnikka?)
 Why? Are you busy?
 c. Ne. Chom pappūmnida.
 d. (Kūrōm, annyōngghi kashipshio. Tto pwepkessūmnida.)
 Well, good-bye. I'll see you again.
 e. Ne. Tto pwepkessūmnida. Annyōngghi kyeshipshio.
 OR Ne. Annyōngghi kyeshipshio. Tto pwepkessūmnida.

UNIT 2, LESSON 1

Exercise 2

a. hana	f. yōsōt	k. set	p. tasōt
b. tul	g. ilgop	l. hana	q. yōdōl
c. set	h. yōdōl	m. tul	r. yōl
d. net	i. ahop	n. net	s. ilgop
e. tasōt	j. yōl	o. yōsōt	t. ahop

Exercise 3

a. yōlhana	e. yōltasōt	i. yōlahop	m. yōlyōsōt
b. yōltul	f. yōlyōsōt	j. yōltul	n. yōltasōt
c. yōlset	g. yōlilgop	k. yōlnet	o. yōlset
d. yōlnet	h. yōlyōdōl	l. yōlhana	

Exercise 4

a. (yōlhana) 11	g. (yōltasōt) 15	m. (ahop) 9
b. (yōdōl) 8	h. (yōltul) 12	n. (yōlyōdōl) 18
c. (ilgop) 7	i. (tasōt) 5	o. (yōsōt) 6
d. (yōlyōsōt) 16	j. (yōlahop) 19	p. (yōlilgop) 17
e. (net) 4	k. (tul) 2	
f. (hana) 1	l. (yōlnet) 14	

Exercise 6

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| a. yōlhangae | e. yōltasōtgae | h. yōlilgopgae |
| b. tugae | f. yōlahopgae | i. yōlgae |
| c. yōdōlgae | g. yōlsegae | j. yōsōtgae |
| d. negae | | |

Exercise 12

- a. (Pae issūmnikka?)
Are there pears? OR Do you have pears?
- b. (Ne. Pae ahopgae issūmnida.)
Yes. There are nine pears. OR Yes. I have nine pears.
- c. (Sagwa myōtgae issūmnikka?)
How many apples are there? OR How many apples do you have?
- d. (Sagwa ilgopgae issūmnida.)
There are seven apples. OR I have seven apples.
- e. (Milgam myōtgae issūmnikka?)
How many tangerines are there? OR How many tangerines do you have?
- f. (Milgam yōlyōdōlgae issūmnida.)
There are 18 tangerines. OR I have 18 tangerines.

Exercise 13

- Shigye issūmnikka?
- Sagwa issūmnida.
- Pae myōtgae issūmnikka?
- Milgae myōtgae issūmnikka?
- Shigye tugae issūmnida.

Exercise 15

- a. changgyo yōltubun
- b. yukkun sesaram
- c. hasagwan yōlnesaram
- d. changgyo ahopbun
- e. yukkun yōlilgopsaram

Exercise 17

(Changgyo yōsōtbun kyeshimnida.)
There are six officers.

(Hasagwan myōtsaram issūmnikka?)
How many NCOs are there?

(Kim sōnsaengnim kyeshimnida.)
There is Mr. Kim.

(Yukkun yōltasōtsaram issūmnida.)
There are 15 soldiers.

(Konggun changgyo ilgopbun kyeshimnida.)
There are seven Air Force officers.

Exercise 18

(changgyo yōlahopbun)
Changgyo yōlahopbun kyeshimnida.

(yukkun yōdōlsaram)
Yukkun yōdōlsaram issūmnida.

(soryōng yōlyōsōtbun)
Soryōng yōlyōsōtbun kyeshimnida.

(hasagwan nesaram)
Hasagwan nesaram issūmnida.

(yukkun changgyo sebun)
Yukkun changgyo sebun kyeshimnida.

Exercise 19

Changgyo kyeshimnikka?

Yukkun changgyo hanbun kyeshimnida.

Yukkun myōtsaram issūmnikka?

Sagwa yōlyōdōlgae issūmnida.

Chungryōng tubun kyeshimnida.

UNIT 2, LESSON 2

Exercise 2

- | | | |
|----------|---------|----------|
| a. il | h. p'al | o. o |
| b. i | i. ku | p. ch'il |
| c. sam | j. ship | q. yuk |
| d. sa | k. sam | r. p'al |
| e. o | l. i | s. ship |
| f. yuk | m. il | t. ku |
| g. ch'il | n. sa | |

Exercise 4

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| a. shibil | h. shipp'al | o. shipku |
| b. shibi | i. shipku | p. shimnyuk |
| c. shipsam | j. shipsa | q. shibi |
| d. shipsa | k. shipp'al | r. shibil |
| e. shibo | l. shipsam | s. ship |
| f. shimnyuk | m. shipch'il | |
| g. shipch'il | n. shibo | |

Exercise 5

(sam) 3	(ch'il) 7
(ship) 10	(shipsam) 13
(shipsa) 14	(shipch'il) 17
(yuk) 6	(il) 1
(shipbo) 15	(p'al) 8
(i) 2	(shibi) 12
(ku) 9	(o) 5
(shibil) 11	(shipku) 19
(sa) 4	(sam) 3
(shipp'al) 18	(shimnyuk) 16

Exercise 8

(samship) 30	(yukship) 60
(oship) 50	(ch'ilship) 70
(p'alship) 80	(iship) 20
(saship) 40	(kuship) 90

Exercise 10

(oshibil) 51	(kushipbo) 95
(sashipku) 49	(samshimnyuk) 36
(ishipsam) 23	(samshipp'al) 38
(p'alshibi) 82	(ch'ilshipsa) 74
(ishipch'il) 27	(sashipsam) 43
(yukship) 60	(kushipbil) 91

Exercise 11

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| a. samshipch'il | g. oshipsam |
| b. ch'ilshibi | h. kushimnyuk |
| c. ishimnyuk | i. ishibo |
| d. sashipp'al | j. sashibil |
| e. yukshipch'il | k. samshibi |
| f. p'alshibil | l. yukshimnyuk |

Exercise 14

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| (ibaegoship) 250 | (obaekship) 510 |
| (sambaeksaship) 340 | (sabaekch'ilship) 470 |
| (p'albaegoship) 850 | (ch'ilbaekkuship) 790 |
| (ch'ilbaegoship) 750 | (sambaekship) 310 |
| (kubaeksamship) 930 | (p'albaeksaship) 840 |
| (paegiship) 120 | (obaekp'alship) 580 |

Exercise 16

(Kapshi ōlmamnikka?)
How much is the price?

(Ch'ilbaegwōnimnida.)
It's 700 won.

(K'ōp'i sejan chushipshio.)
Please give me three cups of coffee.

(Saida nebyōng ōlmamnikka?)
How much are four bottles of lemon-lime soda?

(Tambae ōpsūmnida.)
I don't have cigarettes.

Exercise 18

- a. Sagwa ōlmamnikka? OR Sagwa kapshi ōlmamnikka?
- b. (Ibaegwōnimnida.)
Sagwa negae chushipshio.
- c. (Ne. Algessūmnida.)
Milgam issūmnikka?
- d. (Ne. Issūmnida.)
Milgam yōlgae chushipshio.

Exercise 19

- K'ōp'i hanjan chushipshio.
- Tambae issūmnikka?
- Pōsū yogūm ch'ilbaegwōnimnida.
- Saida hanbyōng chushipshio.
- K'ōp'i kapshi yukpaegwōnimnida. OR K'ōp'i yukpaegwōnimnida.

UNIT 2, LESSON 3

Exercise 2

- (samch'ōnwōn) 3,000 won
(p'alch'ōnobaegwōn) 8,500 won
(yukch'ōnsabaegwōn) 6,400 won
(kuch'ōnch'ilbaegwōn) 9,700 won
(och'ōnkubaegwōn) 5,900 won
(sach'ōnsambaegwōn) 4,300 won
ich'ōnp'albaegwōn) 2,800 won
(ch'ōnbaegwōn) 1,100 won

Exercise 3

- a. samch'ōnobaekship
- b. ich'ōnkubaegiship
- c. kuch'ōnsamshibil
- d. ch'ōnsaship
- e. och'ōnobaegoshiibo
- f. ch'ilch'ōnpaegoship
- g. sach'ōnch'ilbaekch'ilshipsam
- h. yukch'ōnsabaekkiship
- i. p'alch'ōnp'alship
- j. kuch'ōnil

Exercise 5

man
samman
saman
yungman
saman yukch'ōnwōn
ch'ilman samch'ōnwōn'
kuman och'ōnwōn
shimmanwōn

Exercise 7

ibaengmanwōn
obaengmanwōn
ch'ōnmanwōn
samch'ōnmanwōn
ch'ilch'ōnmanwōn

Exercise 8

(kumanwōn) 90,000 won
(yungman sach'ōnwōn) 64,000 won
(ch'ilman och'ōnwōn) 75,000 won
(shimmanwōn) 100,000 won
(shibimanwōn) 120,000 won
(shipch'ilmanwōn) 170,000 won
(ishibomanwōn) 250,000 won
(samshipsamanwōn) 340,000 won

Exercise 10

(Hangukton issūmnikka?)
Do you have any Korean money?

(Ne. Hangukton shimmanwōn issūmnida.)
Yes. I have 100,000 won in Korean money.

(Ilbure ch'ilbaekkushipwōnimnida.)
It's 790 won for a dollar.

(Tamnyo ōpsūmnida.)
I don't have blankets.

(Ch'imdae shimmanwōnimnida.)
The bed is 100,000 won.

Exercise 13

Migukton ōlmamnikka?

Hwannyul ōlmamnikka?

Ilbul hangukton ōlmamnikka?

Tamnyo ch'atsūmnida.

Hangukton ōpsūmnida.

Exercise 15

a. (Ōsō oshipshio. Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?)
Ch'imdae ch'atsūmnida.

b. (Ne. Ch'imdae yōgi issūmnida.)
Igō ōlmamnikka?

c. (Oshipch'ilmanwōnimnida.)
Migukton ōlmamnikka?
(Hwannyul ibure p'albaegwōnimnida. Kūrōnikka, ch'ilbaek
shibibul oshipchōnimnida.)

Unit 2 Self-evaluation Quiz

1. a. Pae issūmnikka?
 b. (Ne. Sabaegwōnimnida.)
 Yes. They're four hundred won.
 c. Negae chushipshio. OR Pae negae chushipshio.
 d. Milgam ōlmamnikka?

2. a. (Myōtbun kyeshimnikka?)
 How many persons are there?
 b. K'ōp'i tujan chushipshio.
 c. (Hanjan sambaegoshibwōnimnida.)
 One cup is 350 won. OR It's 350 won a cup.

3. a. Saida hanbyōng chushipshio.
 b. Tambae issūmnikka?
 c. (Ōpsūmnida.)
 I don't have any.

4. a. (Ōsō oshipshio. Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?)
 Please come in. What are you looking for? OR
 Come right in. May I help you?
 b. Tamnyo ch'atsūmnida.
 c. (Igō iman och'ōnwōnimnida.)
 It's 25,000 won.
 d. Migukton ōlmamnikka?

5. a. Ilbul hangukton ōlmamnikka?
 b. Hwannyul ōlmamnikka?
 c. (Yosae hwannyul ilbure p'albaegoshibwōnimnida.)
 The rate is 850 won to the dollar.

UNIT 3, LESSON 1

Exercise 2

(Kūrōm, taūm chue tto oshipshio.)
Well, then, please come again next week.

(K'ōp'i hanjane paegwōnimnida.)
It's 100 won for a cup of coffee.

(Kūrigo, chōgi tambae ōlmamnikka?)
And how much are the cigarettes over there?

(Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?)
What are you looking for? OR May I help you?

(Kim sōnsaengnim ch'ajūshimnikka?)
Are you looking for Mr. Kim?

Exercise 3

Kim sōnsaengnim, ōsō oshipshio.

Kūrigo, tamnyo issūmnikka?

Pae tugae sambaegwōnimnida.

Shillejiman, mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?

Kamsahamnida. Taūm chue tto oshipshio.

K'ōp'i hanjan ōlmamnikka?

Exercise 5

(Saeng maekchu hanjan chushipshio.)
Give me a glass of draft beer.

(Pak sangbyōngnim, komapsūmnida. Tto oshipshio.)
Thank you, SP4 Pak. Come again.

(K'olla hanbyōng issūmnikka?)
Do you have one bottle of cola?

(Maekchu yōsōtbyōnge ōlmamnikka?)
How much is it for six bottles of beer?

(Maekchu sebyōng chushipshio.)
Give me three bottles of beer.

Exercise 6

Saeng maekchu hanjan ōlmamnikka?

K'olla nebyōng chushipshio.

Kim ilbyōng, komapsūmnida. OR Kim ilbyōng, kamsahamnida.

Maekchu hanjan yukpaegwōnimnida.

Yōgi saeng maekchu issūmnikka?

Exercise 13

a. (Ōsō oshipshio. Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?)
K'olla issūmnikka?

b. (Ne. Issūmnida.)
K'olla ōlmamnikka?

c. (Hanbyōnge ibaegwōnimnida.)
Tubyōng chushipshio. Kūrigo, maekchu issūmnikka?

d. (Ne. Chōgi issūmnida. Hanbyōnge yukpaegwōnimnida.)
Hanbyōng chushipshio. Modu ōlmamnikka?

e. (Modu ch'ōnwōnimnida.)
Yōgi issūmnida.

f. (Komapsūmnida. Annyōngghi kashipshio.)
Annyōngghi kyeshipshio.

UNIT 3, LESSON 2

Exercise 2

(Shigye ch'ajūshimnikka?)
Are you looking for watches?

(Ibulhago tamnyo yōgi mani issūmnida.)
We have lots of quilts and blankets here.

(Kūrōm, ppalgansaek tamnyo chom popshida.)
Well, let me see some red blankets.

(Tamnyo segae sagessūmnida. Ssage hapshida.)
I'll buy three blankets. Let's make them cheap.

Exercise 3

Igō tugae sagessūmnida.

Ibul igō ssage hapshida.

Ppalgansaek tamnyo igō ōlmamnikka?

Ch'oroksaek ibul issūmnikka?

Tugae sach'ōnwōn ōttōssūmnikka?

Exercise 4

- a. (Tamnyo ch'atsūmnida.)
Tamnyo an ch'atsūmnida.
- b. (Tugae sagessūmnida.)
Tugae an sagessūmnida.
- c. (Ibul yōgi issūmnida.)
Ibul yōgi ōpsūmnida.
- d. (Kim soryōngnim kyeshimnida.)
Kim soryōngnim an kyeshimnida.

Exercise 6

(Ch'oroksaek tamnyo sagessūmnida.)
I'll buy a green blanket.

(Kkamansaek shigye igō ōlmamnikka?)
How much is this black watch?

(Hinsaek ibul tugae chushipshio.)
Give me two white blankets.

(Orenjisaek ibul chom popshida.)
Let me see some orange quilts.

(Peijisaek t'eibūl igō ōlmamnikka?)
How much is this beige table?

Exercise 10

Noransaek tamnyo ch'ajūshimnikka?

Hinsaek ibul issūmnikka?

Peijisaek sop'a igō chom popshida.

Orenjisaek ibul igō ssage hapshida.

Kkamansaek ibulhago hinsaek ibul chushipshio.

Exercise 14

a. (Ōsō oshipshio. Ibul ch'ajūshimnikka?)
Aniyo. Tamnyo ch'atsūmnida.

b. (Tamnyo yōgi mani issūmnida.)
Tamnyo igō ōlmamnikka?

c. (Samman yukch'ōnwōnimnida.)
Tugae sagessūmnida. Ssage hapshida.

d. (Tugae yungmanwōn ōttōssūmnikka?)
Chossūmnida. Ppalgansaek tamnyohago p'aransaek tamnyo
hanassik chushipshio.

UNIT 3, LESSON 3

Exercise 2

(Yōgi ch'ōngbaji mani issūmnida.)
There are a lot of blue jeans here.

(Ch'ōngbaji igō ibōboshishio.)
Try these blue jeans on.

(Ch'ōngbaji igō aju chal matsūmnida.)
These blue jeans fit very well.

(Aju pogi chossūmnida.)
It looks very good.

(Kūlsseyo....)
Well, I'm not so sure....

Exercise 3

Ch'ōngbaji yōgi ōpsūmnikka?

Saijū samshimnyuk issūmnikka?

Ch'ōngbaji igō ōlmamnikka?

Nōmu pissamnida. Ssage hapshida.

Kūlsseyo....

Exercise 4

- a. (Ōsō oshipshio. Ch'ōngbaji ch'ajūshimnikka?)
Ne. Ch'ōngbaji ch'atsūmnida.
- b. (Yōgi mani issūmnida.)
Igō ōlmamnikka? OR Ch'ōngbaji igō ōlmamnikka?
- c. (Man sach'ōnwōnimnida. Ibōboshishio.)
Saijū samshimnyuk issūmnikka?
- d. (Samshimnyuk yōgi issūmnida.)
Igō chal matsūmnida.

- e. (Aju pogi chossūmnida.)
Ssage hapshida.
- f. (Man ch'ōnwōn chushipshio.)
Chossūmnida.

Exercise 6

(Panji igō an chaksūmnida.)
This ring is not small.

(Kūmbanji igō an k'ūmnida.)
This gold ring is not big.

(Mokkōri igō aju pogi chossūmnida.)
This necklace looks very nice.

(Paekkūmbanji yōgi mani issūmnida.)
We have lots of platinum rings here.

(Paekkūmbanji igō nōmu chaksūmnida.)
This platinum ring is too small.

Exercise 7

- a. Yōgi kūmmokkōri issūmnikka?
- b. Paekkūmbanji chom popshida.
- c. Nōmu pissamnida.
- d. Igō an k'ūmnida.
- e. Panji igō nōmu chaksūmnida.

Exercise 8

- a. (Mokkōri igō pissamnida.)
Mokkōri igō an pissamnida.
- b. (Tamnyo igō chossūmnida.)
Tamnyo igō an chossūmnida.
- c. (Ch'ōngbaji yōgi issūmnida.)
Ch'ōngbaji yōgi ōpsūmnida.

- d. (Igō pogi chossūmnida.)
Igō pogi an chossūmnida.
- e. (Ch'ōngbaji chaksūmnida.)
Ch'ōngbaji an chaksūmnida.

Exercise 12

- a. Yōgi posōk mani issūmnikka?
- b. Panjihago mōkkōri chom popshida.
- c. Paekkūmbanji igō nōmu chaksūmnida.
- d. Kūmbanjihago kūmmōkkōri pissamnida.
- e. Ch'ōngbaji an pissamnida.
- f. Panji igō an chaksūmnida.

Exercise 14

- a. (Pappūshimnikka?)
Pyōllo an pappūmnida.
- b. (Shillejiman, kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?)
Ajik mihonimnida.
- c. (Che ch'ingu sogae hamnida. Ibuni Pak Han-Ungimnida.)
Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida. Williams pyōngjangimnida.
- d. (Ōsō oshipshio.)
K'ōp'i hanjan chushipshio.

(Yōgi issūmnida.)
K'ōp'i ōlmamnikka? OR K'ōp'i kapshi ōlmamnikka?
- e. (Ōsō oshipshio. Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?)
Kūmbanji chom popshida.

(Yōgi issūmnida.)
Nōmu chaksūmnida. OR Igō nōmu chaksūmnida.

Exercise 15

- a. (Ōsō oshipshio. Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?)
Posōk chom popshida.
- b. (Ne. Yōgi mani issūmnida.)
Paekkūmbanji igō ōlmamnikka?
- c. (Kumanwōnimnida.)
Nōmu chaksūmnida.
- d. (Kūrōm, igō ōttōssūmnikka?)
Chal matsūmnida. P'alman och'wōne hapshida.
- e. (Kollanhamnida. P'alman p'alch'ōnwōn chushipshio.)
Chossūmnida. Tto mōkkōri chom popshida. OR Chossūmnida.
Kūrigo, mōkkōri chom popshida.

Unit 3 Self-evaluation Quiz

1. a. Tamnyohago ibul chom popshida.
 b. Ibul igō ōlmamnikka?
 c. Imanwōne hapshida.
 d. (Kollanhamnida.)
 I can't do that. OR No way.

2. a. Segae sagessūmnida.
 b. Ssage hapshida.
 c. (Segae ch'ilmanwōn ōttōssūmnikka?)
 How about three for 70,000 won?

3. a. P'aranseak tamnyo issūmnikka?
 b. (Ōpsūmnida. Ch'oroksaek tamnyohago ppalgansaek ibul
 issūmnida.)
 He has green and red.
 c. (Komapsūmnida. Tto oshipshio.)
 Thank you. Please come again.

4. a. Ch'ōngbaji igō ōlmamnikka?
 b. Saijū samshibi ōpsūmnikka?
 c. (Ibōboshipshio.)
 Try them on.
 d. Kūlsseyo... nōmu chaksūmnida.

5. a. Panjihago mōkkōri chom popshida.
 b. (Kūmbanji mani issūmnida.)
 We have lots of gold rings.
 c. Nōmu pissamnida.

UNIT 4, LESSON 1

Exercise 2

(yōlhanshi)	eleven o'clock
(yōdōlshi)	eight o'clock
(neshi)	four o'clock
(hanshi)	one o'clock
(yōltushi)	twelve o'clock
(tasōtshi)	five o'clock
(tushi)	two o'clock
(ilgopshi)	seven o'clock
(yōlshi)	ten o'clock
(seshi)	three o'clock
(ahopshi)	nine o'clock
(yōsōtshi)	six o'clock

Exercise 3

yōlshi	tushi
neshi	seshi
ahopshi	tasōtshi
yōdōlshi	yōlhanshi
yōsōtshi	yōltushi
hanshi	ilgopshi

Exercise 7

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| a. yōltushiban | d. yōlshiban |
| b. yōsōtshiban | e. hanshiban |
| c. tasōtshiban | f. seshiban |

Exercise 13

Neshi sashippunimnida.

Hanshi shibobunimnida.

Yōltushi obunimnida.

Yōlhanshi shippunimnida.

Yōdōlshibanimnida. OR Yōdōlshi samshippunimnida.

Yōsōtshi ishibobunimnida.

Exercise 16

Yōsōtshi shibobunjōnimnida.

Seshi obunjōnimnida.

Neshi shippunjōnimnida.

Yōdōlshi obunjōnimnida.

Ilgopshi shippunjōnimnida.

Hanshi shibobunjōnimnida.

Exercise 17

(Tasōtshi ishīppunimnida.)
It's 5:20.

(Ilgopshibanimnida.)
It's half past seven. OR It's 7:30.

(Chigūm neshimnida.)
It's four o'clock now.

(Yōlhanshi obunjōnimnida.)
It's five minutes to 11.

(Seshigan kōllimnida.)
It takes three hours.

(Yōltushi shīppunjōnimnida.)
It's ten minutes to twelve.

Exercise 19

(Ajik ojōnimnida.)
It's still morning.

(Naeil ojōne oshipshio.)
Please come tomorrow morning.

(Ohu tushie oshipshio.)
Please come at 2 p.m.

(Naeil ohue kagessūmnida.)
I'll go tomorrow afternoon.

Exercise 20

Ojōne oshipshio.

Naeil ohue kagessūmnida.

Ohue an pappūmnida.

Ajik ojōnimnida.

UNIT 4, LESSON 2

Exercise 2

(kūmyoil)	Friday
(suyoil)	Wednesday
(iryoil)	Sunday
(t'oyoil)	Saturday
(wōryoil)	Monday
(mogyoil)	Thursday
(hwayoil)	Tuesday

Exercise 6

(kuwōl)	September
(shiwōl)	October
(samwōl)	March
(yuwōl)	June
(shibirwōl)	November
(irwōl)	January
(iwōl)	February
(ch'irwōl)	July
(p'arwōl)	August

Exercise 10

(iil)	the second
(shibil)	the tenth
(shibiil)	the twelfth
(shiboil)	the fifteenth
(shibiril)	the eleventh
(p'aril)	the eighth
(ch'iril)	the seventh

Exercise 12

(ch'irwōl shibiil)	July twelfth
(sawōl shibiril)	April eleventh
(irwōl shipsail)	January fourteenth
(shiwōl shibil)	October tenth
(shibiwōl kuil)	December ninth
(yuwōl ch'iril)	June seventh

Exercise 14

(shimnyugil)	the sixteenth
(ishibil)	the twentieth
(shipkuil)	the nineteenth
(samshibil)	the thirtieth
(ishipsail)	the twenty-fourth
(shibiil)	the twenty-second
(samshibiril)	the thirty-first
(ishimnyugil)	the twenty-sixth

Exercise 16

(shiwōl ishibil)	October twentieth
(shibiwōl ishiboil)	December twenty-fifth
(p'arwōl samshibil)	August thirtieth
(yuwōl shimnyugil)	June sixteenth
(iwōl ishipp'aril)	February twenty-eighth
(irwōl yugil)	January sixth

Exercise 18

- Onūl yuwōl shiboirimnida.
- Onūl shiwōl yugirimnida.
- Onūl owōl shipsamirimnida.
- Onūl samwōl shipkuirimnida.
- Onūl iwōl ishibirimnida.

UNIT 4, LESSON 3

Exercise 2

(ch'ōngubaek yukshibinyōn)	1962
(ch'ōngubaek p'alshibilnyōn)	1981
(ch'ōngubaek sashibinyōn)	1942
(ch'ōngubaek ch'ilshipch'ilnyōn)	1977
(ch'ōnp'albaek kushimnyungnyōn)	1896

Exercise 3

ch'ōngubaek yukshibonyōn
ch'ōngubaek yukshipsamnyōn
ch'ōngubaek p'alshipsanyōn
ch'ōngubaek ch'ilshipkunyōn
ch'ōngubaek oshipch'ilnyōn

Exercise 5

(ch'ōngubaek ch'ilshipsamyōn sawōl ishiboil)
April 25, 1973

(ch'ōngubaek yukshimnyungnyōn ch'irwōl ishipch'iril)
July 27, 1966

(oshimnyōn samwōl yugil)
March 6, '50

(yukshipsanyōn shibirwōl iil)
November 2, '64

(yukshipkunyōn p'arwōl shibiril)
August 11, '69

Exercise 6

yukshibonyōn sawōl yugil
 yukshipsanyōn yuwōl shibil
 ch'ilshipch'ilnyōn kuwōl ishipch'iril
 p'alshipsanyōn shiwōl sail
 p'alshibilnyōn irwōl shipsamil

Exercise 8

(Ōnje hanguge oshyōssūmnikka?)
 When did you come to Korea?

(Changnyōne wassūmnida.)
 I came last year.

(Ōnje yōgi oshyōssūmnikka?)
 When did you come here?

(Kūmnyōne wassūmnida.)
 I came this year.

(Miguge kagessūmnida.)
 I'm going to go to America.

(Naenyōne hanguge kagessūmnida.)
 I'm going to go to Korea next year.

Exercise 9

Ch'ōngubaek p'alshipsanyōne wassūmnida.

Ōnje hanguge oshyōssūmnikka?

Naenyōne miguge kagessūmnida.

Kūmnyōne hanguge wassūmnida.

Ōnje yōgi oshyōssūmnikka?

Exercise 11

(Saengil ōnjemnikka?)
When is your birthday?

(Saengil ch'irwōl sairimnida.)
My birthday is July 4th.

(Che saengil shibiwōl ishiboirimnida.)
My birthday is December 25th.

(Saengil oshipch'ilnyōn shibiwōl p'aririmnida.)
My birthday is December 8, 1957.

Exercise 12

Ohu hanshibane oshipshio.

Myōtshigan kōllimnikka?

Neshigan kōllimnida.

Naeil neshie kagessūmnida.

Onūl samwōl ishipsamirimnida.

Che saengil yukshipsamnyōn ch'irwōl kuirimnida.

Unit 4 Self-evaluation Quiz

1. a. (Chigūm myōtshimnikka?)
What time is it now?
- b. Chigūm yōdōlshipanimnida. OR Chigūm yōdōlshi
samshippunimnida.
- c. Myōtshigan kōllimnikka?
- d. (Tushigan kōllimnida.)
It takes two hours.
- e. Kūrōm, yōlshi shibobunjōne kashipshio.

2. a. (Jones sangbyōngnim, onūl musūn yoirimnikka?)
What day of the week is today, SP4 Jones?
- b. Onūl mogyoirimnida.
- c. (Kūrōm, onūl myōch'irimnikka?)
He wants to know today's date.
- d. Onūl ishiboirimnida.
- e. (Ōnje hanguge oshyōssūmnikka?)
He wants to know when you came to Korea.
- f. Shiwōl shipkuire hanguge wassūmnida.

3. a. (Changyōne hanguge oshyōssūmnikka?)
Did you come to Korea last year?
- b. Aniyō. Kūmnyōn samwōre wassūmnida.
- c. Naenyōn iwōre kagessūmnida.
- d. Onūl ohue pappūshimnikka?
- e. (Pyōllo an pappūmnida. Waeyo?)
I'm not particularly busy. Why?
- f. Onūl che saengirimnida.

UNIT 5, LESSON 1

Exercise 2

(Kūmnyōne yōgi oshyōssūmnikka?)
Did you come here this year?

(Shillejiman, ōnje kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?)
Excuse me, but when did you get married?

(Puindo hanguge kyeshimnikka?)
Is your wife in Korea too?

(Puin kohyang Detroitimnikka?)
Is your wife's hometown Detroit too?

(Aidūl ōdi issūmnikka?)
Where are your children?

(Aidūldo hanguge issūmnida.)
My children are in Korea too.

Exercise 3

San Francisco-esō wassūmnida.

Washington che kohyangimnida.

Sanyōnjōne kyōlhon haessūmnida.

Adūlhago ttaldo kach'i wassūmnida.

Aidūl miguge issūmnida.

Exercise 4

a. (Harris taewinim, hanguge kūmnyōne oshyōssūmnikka?)
Aniyo. Changnyōne wassūmnida.

b. (Ōdisō oshyōssūmnikka?)
Philadelphia-esō wassūmnida.

c. (A, kūrōssūmnikka? Kohyangi Philadelphia-imnikka?)
Aniyo. Chicago che kohyangimnida.

- d. (Shillejiman, kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?)
 Ne. Ch'ilnyōnjōne haessūmnida. OR
 Ne. Ch'ilnyōnjōne kyōlhon haessūmnida.
- e. (Puindo hanguge kach'i oshyōssūmnikka?)
 Mullon kach'i wassūmnida.

Exercise 6

(Aidūldo hanguge wassūmnikka?)
 Did your children come to Korea too?

(Uri pumonim yōgi kyeshimnida.)
 My parents are here.

(Puindo oshyōssūmnikka?)
 Did your wife come too?

(Uri adūlhago ttaldo miguge issūmnida.)
 My son and daughter are in the United States too.

(Pak sōnsaengnim, naeil kashigessūmnikka?)
 Are you going to go tomorrow, Mr. Pak?

Exercise 7

Pumonim ōdi kyeshimnikka?

Aidūl ōdi issūmnikka?

Puin hanguge kyeshimnikka?

Aidūl miguge issūmnida.

Uri chibe oshipshio.

Exercise 9

(Uri namp'yōndo p'alshipsanyōne yōgi wassūmnida.)
 My husband also came here in '84.

(Uri chipsaram yosae an pappūmnida.)
 My wife isn't busy these days.

(Uri adūldo migukkuninimnida.)
 My son also is an American serviceman.

(Pak sōnsaengnim, pumonim ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?)
Mr. Pak, how are your parents getting along?

(Harris taeryōngnim samonim ōdi kyeshimnikka?)
Where is COL Harris' wife?

Exercise 10

Uri namp'yōn changnyōne yōgi wassūmnida.

Uri chipsaramdo hanguge issūmnida.

Kim sōnsaengnim samonim yōgi kyeshimnida.

Uri namp'yōn hasagwanimnida.

Uri chipsaram miguksaramimnida.

Exercise 12

Uri chipsaram changnyōne wassūmnida.

Uri pumōnim miguge kyeshimnida.

Kim sōnsaengnim samonim, pappūshimnikka?

Ōnje yōgi oshyōssūmnikka?

Uri namp'yōn yosae an pappūmnida.

Exercise 17

- a. (Harris taewinim, kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?)
Ne. Kyōlhon haessūmnida. OR Ne. Haessūmnida.
- b. (Aidūldo issūmnikka?)
Adūl hana issūmnida.
- c. (Puinhago adūldo hanguge oshyōssūmnikka?)
Mullon kach'i wassūmnida.
- d. (Pumonim ōdi kyeshimnikka?)
Uri pumonim miguge kyeshimnida. OR Miguge kyeshimnida.
- e. (Puindo kuninishimnikka?)
Aniyo. Chipsaram minganinimnida. OR
Aniyo. Minganinimnida.

UNIT 5, LESSON 2

Exercise 2

(Naeil chōnyōge mwō hashimnikka?)
What are you doing tomorrow evening?

(Ūmshikchōme kapshida.)
Let's go to a restaurant.)

(Musūn maekchu choahashimnikka?)
What kind of beer do you like?

(Arassūmnida. Kūrōpshida.)
All right. Let's do that.

(Ojōn yōlhanshie mannashida.)
Let's meet at 11:00 a.m.

Exercise 3

Naeil ojōne mwō hashimnikka?

Miguk tambae choahashimnikka?

Onūl hanguk ūmshikchōme kapshida.

Ne. Kapshida. Myōtshieyo?

Ohu neshie mannashida.

Pyōllo halil ōpsūmnida.

Exercise 4

a. (Harris taewinim, yosae pappūshimnikka?)
Pyōllo an pappūmnida.

b. (Puindo annyōnghashimnikka?)
Chipsaram chal chinaemnida.

c. (Naeil shigan issūmnikka?)
Pyōllo halil ōpsūmnida. Waeyo?

d. (Chōnyōk kach'i hapshida.)
Chōssūmnida. OR Ne. Kūrōpshida.

- e. (Ilgopshie uri chibe oshipshio.)
Ne. Kamsahamnida.
- f. (Puindo kach'i oshipshio.)
Algessūmnida. Chipsaramdo kach'i kagessūmnida.

Exercise 6

(Ibōn chumare kugyōng kapshida.)
Let's go sightseeing this weekend.

(Saeng maekchu aju mashi chossūmnida.)
Draft beer tastes very good.

(Kūkchang kugyōng choahamnida.)
I like movies.

(Taūm chumare pappūshimnikka?)
Are you busy next weekend?

(Taūm kūmyoire chōnyōk kach'i hapshida.)
Let's have dinner together next Friday.

Exercise 7

(Mashi issūmnida.)
Mashi ōpsūmnida.

(Igō sagessūmnida.)
Igō an sagessūmnida.

(Pogi chossūmnida.)
Pogi an chossūmnida.

(Pumonim miguge kyeshimnida.)
Pumonim miguge an kyeshimnida.

(Ch'ōngbaji igō k'ūmnida.)
Ch'ōngbaji igō an k'ūmnida.

Exercise 8

Ibōn chumare mwō hashimnikka?

Kūrōm, naeil kūkchang kugyōng kapshida.

Taūm chumare an pappūmnida.

Kimch'i igō mashi an chossūmnida. OR
Kimch'i igo mashi ōpsūmnida.

Uri chipsaramdo hanguk ūmshik choahamnida.

Exercise 10

(Chigūm ōdi kashimnikka?)

Where are you going now?

(Seoul shinae kugyōng kapshida.)

Let's go sightseeing in downtown Seoul.

(Naeil chōnyōge kūkchang kugyōng kapshida.)

Let's go to a movie tomorrow evening.

(Ōnje miguge kashimnikka?)

When are you going to the United States?

(Taūm chumare miguge kamnida.)

I am going to the United States next weekend.

Exercise 12

Taūm chumare mwō hashimnikka?

Kūrōm, onūl chōnyōge kūkchange kapshida.

Ōdi kashimnikka?

Seoul shinae kugyōng kapshida.

Ōnje miguge kashimnikka?

Exercise 17

- a. (Harris taewinim, ōsō oshipshio. Oraeganmanimnida.)
Ne. Kim sōnsaengnim, oraeganmanimnida. Ōttōk'e chinae-
shimnikka?
- b. (Chal chinaemnida.)
Uri chipsaram sogae hamnida.
- c. (Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida. Kim Sang-Jinimnida. Ibōn chumare
pappūshimnikka?)
An pappūmnida.
- d. (Kūrōm, t'oyoil ilgopshie uri chibe oshipshio. Chōnyōk
kach'i hapshida.)
Ne. Kamsahamnida.
- e. (Puindo kach'i oshipshio. Puin hanguk ūmshik choahashim-
nikka?)
Chipsaramdo hanguk ūmshik choahamnida.

UNIT 5, LESSON 3

Exercise 2

(Onūl myōtshie kūnmu haeya twemnikka?)
What time do you have to work today?

(Ne. Kot set'ak hagesūmnida.)
Yes. I will wash it right away.

(Naeil ojōne chom iltchigi oseyo.)
Please come a little early tomorrow morning.

(Ibōn chumare kūnmu hashimnikka?)
Do you work this weekend?

(Kunbok igō ppalli tariseyo.)
Please iron this uniform quickly.

Exercise 3

Igō kot set'ak haseyo.

Paji igō ppalli tariseyo.

Yōdōlshie kūnmu haeya twemnida.

Kunbok chōgō susōn haseyo.

Misūt'ō Cho, chom iltchigi oseyo.

Exercise 5

(Set'ak hamnida.)
Set'ak haeya twemnida.

(Samnida.)
Saya twemnida.

(Kūnmu hamnida.)
Kūnmu haeya twemnida.

(Omnida.)
Wayā twemnida.

(Hamnida.)
Haeya twemnida.

Exercise 7

Ch'ōngbaji igō set'ak haeya twemnida.

Chigūm chibe kaya twemnida.

Naeil kaya twemnikka?

Sugo haessūmnida.

Ibōn chumare kūnmu haeya twemnida.

Exercise 9

(Misūt'ō Cho, che kunwaha issūmnikka?)
Mr. Cho, do you have my boots?

(Nūtke kūnmu haeya twemnida.)
I have to work late.

(Kudu igō chom chaksūmnida.)
These shoes are a little small.

(Che kyegūpchanghago hōrittī ch'atsūmnida.)
I'm looking for my rank insignia and my belt.

(Kunwaha chōgō chom popshida.)
Let me see those boots.

Exercise 10

Kkamansaek kudu chom popshida.

Naeil chom nūtke oseyo.

Onūl kyegūpchang saya twemnida.

Misūt'ō Cho, che kunwaha ōdi issūmnikka?

Che hōrittihago kudu ch'atsūmnida.

Exercise 12

(Iltchigi oseyo.)
Iltchigi oji maseyo.

(Paji igō set'ak haseyo.)
Paji igō set'ak haji maseyo.

(Kunbok tariseyo.)
Kunbok tariji maseyo.

(Kunwha susōn haseyo.)
Kunwha susōn haji maseyo.

(Nūtke kūnmu haseyo.)
Nūtke kūnmu haji maseyo.

Exercise 13

(Myōtshie kūnmu haeya twemnikka?)
What time do you have to work?

(Paji chōgō set'ak haji maseyo.)
Don't wash those pants.

(Kunbok igō tariji maseyo.)
Don't iron this uniform.

(Hōrittihago kyegūpchang saya twemnida.)
I have to buy a belt and insignia.

(Misūt'ō Cho, chom ppalli iri oseyo.)
Mr. Cho, please come here quickly.

Exercise 15

Chōgō set'ak haji maseyo.

Kunwha chōgō nōmu k'ūmnida.

Kyegūpchang issūmnikka?

Nūtke kagessūmnida.

Paji tariji maseyo.

Iltchigi waya twemnida.

Exercise 18

- a. Misūt'ō Cho, iri oseyo.
- b. (Ne.)
Ch'ōngbaji igō set'akhago tariseyo.
- c. (Ne. Arassūmnida. Onūl ōdi kashimnikka?)
Ohu hanshie Seoul kamnida. Kūrōnikka, ppalli haseyo.
- d. (Ne. Kot hagesūmnida.)
Kūrigo, kyegūpchang igō chom susōn haseyo.
- e. (Ne. Naeil myōtshie kūnmu hashimnikka?)
Yodolshie kunmu haeya twemnida.
- f. (Ne. Algesūmnida.)
Sugo haessūmnida.

Unit 5 Self-evaluation Quiz

1. a. (Ōdisō oshyōssūmnikka?)
Where did you come from?
- b. Chicago-esō wassūmnida. Che kohyangimnida.
- c. (Puindo oshyōssūmnikka?)
Did your wife come too?
- d. Mullon kach'i wassūmnida.

2. a. Sanyōnjōne kyōlhon haessūmnida. OR
Sanyōnjōne haessūmnida.
- b. Adūl hana ttal tul issūmnida.
- c. (Pumonim ōdi kyeshimnikka?)
Where are your parents?
- d. Uri pumonim miguge kyeshimnida.

3. a. Naeil chōnyōge mwō hashimnikka?
- b. Kūrōm, chōnyōk kach'i hapshida.
- c. Tasōtshie mannashida.
- d. Musūn ūmshik choahashimnikka?

4. a. Kunbok igō set'ak haseyo.
- b. Tariji maseyo. OR Kunbok tariji maseyo.
- c. (Myōtshie kūnmu hashimnikka?)
What time do you go to work?
- d. Ohu neshie kūnmu haeya twemnida.

5. a. Misūt'ō Pak, iri chom ppalli oseyo.
b. Kunbokhago kunwha ōdi issūmnikka?
c. (Tto kyegūpchangdo yōgi issūmnida.)
Here's the insignia too.
d. Sugo haessūmnida.

UNIT 6, LESSON 1

Exercise 2

(Shillehamnida. Chōgi hwajangshil issūmnikka?)
Excuse me. Is there a rest room over there?

(Mianhamnida. Yōgi hwajangshil ōpsūmnida.)
I'm sorry. There's no rest room here.

(Ūmshikchōm chōgi orūntchoge issūmnikka?)
Is the restaurant over there on the right?

(Chom ch'ōnch'ōnhi malssūmhae chushipshio.)
Please say that a little more slowly.

(Kūkchang orūntchoge issūmnida.)
The theater is on the right.

Exercise 3

Yōgi hwajangshil issūmnikka?

Chōgi orūntchoge issūmnida.

Yōboseyo! Shillehamnida.

Ch'ōnch'ōnhi malssūmhae chushipshio.

Mianhamnida.

Exercise 5

(Tabang chōgi orūntchoge issūmnida.)
The coffee shop is over there on the right.

(Naija hot'el wentchoge issūmnikka?)
Is the Naija Hotel on the left side?

(Tabang pildinge issūmnida.)
The coffee shop is in the building.

(Miguk shiktang Naija hot'el araech'ūnge issūmnida.)
The American restaurant is on the Naija Hotel's lower level.

(Yōgi wich'ūnge hwajangshil ōpsūmnida.)
There is no rest room upstairs here.

Exercise 6

Tabang araech'ūnge issūmnikka?

Kūkchang ōdi issūmnikka?

Chōgi wentchoge issūmnikka?

Wich'ūnge hwajangshil ōpsūmnikka?

Hot'ere tabang issūmnikka?

Pildinge shiktang issūmnikka?

Exercise 8

(Hot'el orūntchok ch'ōtchae pildingimnida.)
The hotel is the first building on the right.

(Wich'ūng ch'ōtchae pang misū Yi pangimnida.)
The first room upstairs is Miss Yi's room.

(Tashi hanbōn ch'ōnch'ōnhi malssūmhae chushipshio.)
Please say it again slowly.

(Shiktang setchae pildinge issūmnida.)
The restaurant is in the third building.

(Chōgi tultchae pilding kūkchangimnida.)
The second building over there is a theater.

Exercise 14

- a. Yōboseyo! Shillehamnida.
- b. (Ne?)
Kūkchang ōdi issūmnikka?
- c. (Kūkchang chōgi orūntchoge issūmnida.)
Mianhamnida. Tashi hanbōn malssūmhae chushipshio.
- d. (Kūkchang chōgi orūntchoge issūmnida.)
Chōgi setchae pildingimnikka?
- e. (Ne. Kūrōssūmnida.)
Kūkchang araech'ūnge issūmnikka?
- f. (Aniyo. Wich'unge issūmnida.)
Ne. Algessūmnida. Kamsahamnida.

UNIT 6, LESSON 2

Exercise 2

(Kūkchangesō wentchogūro toshipshio.)
Turn left at the theater.

(Han tushigan kōllimnida.)
It takes about two hours.

(Setchae pildingesō orūntchogūro toshipshio.)
Turn right at the third building.

(Seoul shinae ōttōk'e kamnikka?)
How do I get to downtown Seoul?

(Kūrigō ttokparo kashipshio.)
And then go straight.

Exercise 3

Shiktang ōttōk'e kamnikka?

Shigan ōlmana kōllimnikka?

Orūntchogūro kamnikka?

Pōsū t'ōminal chōnegōrie issūmnikka?

Ch'ōnmaneyo.

Exercise 5

(Yōgi shiktangimnida.)
This place is a mess hall.

(Chōnegōriesō orūntchogūro toshipshio.)
Turn right at that intersection.

(Chōgisō wentchogūro toshipshio.)
Turn left over there.

(Chōbun minganinimnida.)
That person is a civilian.

(Itamnyo nōmu pissamnida.)
This blanket is too expensive.

(Ibuni migukkuninimnida.)
This person is an American service member.

Exercise 6

Inegōrie issūmnikka?

Chōbun Yi soryōngimnida.

Chōnegōriesō wentchogūro toshipshio.

Ich'ōngbaji sagessūmnida. OR
Ch'ōngbaji igō sagessūmnida.

Yōgi pōsū t'ōminarimnikka?

Chōgi tabangimnikka?

Exercise 7

a. Yōboseyo! Shillehamnida.

b. (Ne?)
Pōsū t'ōminal ōttōk'e kamnikka?

c. (Inegōriesō wentchogūro toshipshio. Kūrigo ttokparo
kashipshio.)
Ne. Algessūmnida. OR Ne. Arassūmnida.

d. Seoul kaya twemnida. Pōsū yogūm ōlmamnikka?

e. (Yogūm ch'ōn yukpaegwōnimnida.)
Ne. Kamsahamnida.

Exercise 9

(Yukkyo yōp'e tabang hana issūmnida.)
There's a coffee shop by the overpass.

(Chihadoesō wentchogūro toshipshio.)
Turn left at the underpass.

(Seoul yōk tultchae negōrie issūmnida.)
The Seoul Railroad Station is at the second intersection.

(Taūm shinhodūngesō orūntchogūro toshipshio.)
Turn right at the next traffic light.

(Paekhwajōmesō orūntchogūro toshipshio. Kūrigō ttokparo kashipshio.)
Turn right at the department store. And then go straight.

Exercise 10

Seoul yōk chōgi orūntchoge issūmnikka?

Ichihado yōp'e tabang issūmnikka?

Chōnegōrie paekhwajōm issūmnikka?

Taūm shinhodūngesō wentchogūro kamnikka?

Tongdaemun shijang ōttōk'e kamnikka?

Exercise 11

1. (Inegōriesō orūntchogūro toshipshio. Kūrigō ttokparo kashipshio. Kūrōmyōn, ch'ōtchae shinhodūng yōp'e issūmnida.)
You should be at the theater.
2. (Chōgi tultchae negōriesō orūntchogūro toshipshio. Kūrigō taūm negōrie kashipshio. Kūrigō tto orūntchogūro toshipshio. Kūrōmyōn, wentchok tultchae pildingimnida.)
You should be at the American restaurant.
3. (Inegōriesō wentchogūro toshipshio. Kūrigō ttokparo kashipshio. Kūrōmyōn, setchae negōri yukkyo yōp'e issūmnida.)
You should be at the Korean restaurant.
4. (Inegōriesō orūntchogūro kashipshio. Kūrigō ttokparo kashipshio. Kūrōmyōn, tultchae shinhodūng orūntchoge issūmnida.)
You should be at the department store.
5. (Iri ttokparo kashipshio. Tultchae negōriesō orūntchogūro toshipshio. Kūrigō ttokparo kashipshio. Kūrōmyōn, tultchae negōri wentchoge issūmnida.)
You should be at the bus terminal.

Exercise 12

(Shigan ōlmana kōllimnikka?)
How much time does it take?

(Myōtshigan kōllimnikka?)
How many hours does it take?

(Naija hot'el ōttōk'e kamnikka?)
How do I get to the Naija Hotel?

(Chōibulhago itamnyo sagessūmnida.)
I'll buy that quilt and this blanket.

(Chōgi shiktangimnikka?)
Is that place a mess hall?

Exercise 13

Hanguge changnyōne wassūmnida.

Bostonesō wassūmnida.

Ōnje miguge kashimnikka?

Chōūmshikchōmesō chōnyōk hapshida.

Tultchae shinhodūnge issūmnida.

Exercise 14

- a. (Harris taewinim, onūl chōnyōge mwō hashimnikka?)
Pyōllo halil ōpsūmnida.
- b. (Chōnyōk kach'i hapshida. Uri chibe oshipshio.)
Chossūmnida. Myōtshieyo?
- c. (Ch'ōngsa tabangesō yōsōtshie mannaphshida.)
Ch'ōngsa tabang Naija hot'el yop'e issūmnikka?
- d. (Aniyo. Chōgi shinhodūng yōp'e issūmnida.)
Ch'ōtchae shinhodūngeyo?
- e. (Ne. Kūrōssūmnida. Kūrigo puindo oshipshio.)
Ne. Algessūmnida. Uri chipsaramdo kagessūmnida.

UNIT 6, LESSON 3

Exercise 2

(Kyeḡūpchang irōssūmnida.)
I lost my insignia.

(Ibugūne migun emp'i ōpsūmnida.)
There are no American MPs in this area.

(Misū Kim yōngō chal hamnida.)
Miss Kim speaks good English.

(P'ach'ulso taūm negōrie issūmnida.)
The police substation is at the next intersection.

(Chōl ttara oshipshio.)
Please follow me.

(Musūn irimnikka?)
What's the matter?

Exercise 3

Migun emp'i ōdi issūmnikka?

Ibugūne p'ach'ulso issūmnikka?

Kil irōssūmnida.

Nugu yōngō hashimnikka?

Chom towa chushipshio.

Chal morūgessūmnida.

Exercise 5

(Migunbudaē ch'atsūmnida.)
I'm looking for an American military post.

(Chigap yōgi ōpsūmnida.)
The wallet is not here.

(Chōnhwa hwajangshil yōp'e issūmnida.)
The telephone is next to the rest room.

(Migunbudaē kach'i kapshida.)
Let's go together to the American military post.

(Chōgi pul nassūmnida!)
There's a fire over there!

(Migunbudaēsō kūnmu hashimnikka?)
Do you work at the American military post?

Exercise 6

Chōpilding p'ach'ulsoimnikka?

Kil irōssūmnida. Chom towa chushipshio?

Migunbudaē ōttōk'e kamnikka?

Shillejiman, nugu yōngō hashimnikka?

Pul nassūmnida! Chōnhwa issūmnikka?

Chigap irōssūmnida.

Exercise 13

a. Yōboseyo. Chom towa chushipshio.

b. (Ne. Musūn irimnikka?)
Chigap irōssūmnida. Ibugūne migunbudaē issūmnikka?

c. (Chal morūgessūmnida.)
Nugu yōngō hashimnikka?

d. (Kūlsseyo. Chal mot hamnida.)
Kūrōm, p'ach'ulso ōdi issūmnikka?

e. (A, p'ach'ulsoyo? Kach'i kapshida. Chōl ttara oshipshio.)
Kamsahamnida.

Unit 6 Self-evaluation Quiz

1.
 - a. Yōboseyo! Shillehamnida.
 - b. Hanilgwan ōdi issūmnikka?
 - c. Ch'ōnch'ōnhi malssūmhae chushipshio. OR
Chom ch'ōnch'ōnhi malssūmhae chushipshio.
 - d. (Chōgi wentchok ch'ōtchae pildingimnida.)
It's the first building on the left over there.
 - e. Ne. Algessūmnida. Kamsahamnida. OR
Ne. Arassūmnida. Komapsūmnida.

2.
 - a. Shillehamnida. Lotte paekhwajōm ōttōk'e kamnikka? OR
Shillejiman, Lotte paekhwajōm ōttōk'e kamnikka?
 - b. Tashi hanbōn malssūmhae chushipshio.
 - c. (Chō negōriesō wentchogūro toshipshio. Kūriigo ttokparo
kashipshio. Kūrōmyōn, tultchae shinhodūnge issūmnida.)
Turn left. It will be at the second traffic light.
 - d. Shigan ōlmana kōllimnikka?
 - e. (Han ishibobun kōllimnida.)
It takes about 25 minutes.

3.
 - a. Hwajangshil ch'atsūmnida. Yōgi issūmnikka?
 - b. (Mianhamnida. Yōgi ōpsūmnida. Wich'ūnge issūmnida.)
I'm sorry. There isn't one here. It's upstairs.
 - c. Ch'ōtchae pangimnikka?
 - d. (Aniyo. Setchae pangimnida.)
No. It's the third room.

4. a. Yōboseyo! Chom towa chushipshio.
b. (Musūn irimnikka?)
What's the matter? OR What's the problem?
c. Kil irōssūmnida. Migunbudae ōttōk'e kamnikka?
d. (Mianhamnida. Chal morūgessūmnida.)
I'm sorry. I don't know.
5. a. Ibugūne p'alch'ulso issūmnikka?
b. (Ne. Kach'i kapshida. Chōl ttara oshipshio.)
Yes. Let's go together. Please follow me.
c. Nugu yōngō hashimnikka?
d. (Morūgessumnida. chal mot hamnida.)
I don't know. I can't.
e. Ibugūne migun emp'i issūmnikka?

UNIT 7, LESSON 1

Exercise 2

(Kim sōnsaengnim, insamch'a hashigessūmnikka?)
Would you like some ginseng tea, Mr. Kim?

(Onūl sagwa jjusū ōpsūmnida.)
We don't have apple juice today.

(Insamch'a hanbōn haeboshipshio.)
Try some ginseng tea some time.

(K'ōp'i p'iryo ōpsūmnida.)
I don't need any coffee.

(Saeng maekchu yōngōro mwōmnikka?
What is saeng maekchu in English?

(Sagwa yōngōro "apple"-imnida.)
Sagwa is "apple" in English.

Exercise 3

Kūrōm, insamch'a hanjan chushipshio.

Igō yōngōro mwōmnikka?

Insamch'a pissamnikka?

Igō mashi an chossūmnida. OR Igō mashi ōpsūmnida.

Igō musūn jjusūmnikka?

K'ūrim p'iryo ōpsūmnida. Kamsahamnida.

Exercise 5

(Hongch'a choahashimnikka?)
Do you like black tea?

(Harris taewinim, orenji jyusū hashigessūmnikka?)
Would you like some orange juice, CPT Harris?

(K'ūrimhago sōlt'ang p'iryo ōpsūmnida.)
I don't need cream and sugar.

(Musūn jyusū hashigessūmnikka?)
What kind of juice would you like to have?

(Kūrōm, tabangesō orenji jyusū hapshida.)
Then, let's have some orange juice at the coffee shop.

(Chōgō hangungmallo sōlt'angimnida.)
That is solt'ang in Korean.

(Yōgi chaettōri hana chushipshio.)
Please bring an ashtray here.

Exercise 6

Chōgō hangungmallo mwōmnikka?

Sōlt'ang p'iryo ōpsūmnida.

Hongch'a mashi chossūmnikka? OR Hongch'a mashi issūmnikka?

Hangungmallo morūgessūmnida.

Sōngnyang ōpsūmnida.

Chaettōri yōngōro mwōmnikka?

Exercise 11

- a. (Ōsō oshipshio. Mwō hashigessūmnikka?)
Ch'a hanjan hagessumnida.
- b. (Musūn ch'a hashigessūmnikka?)
Musun ch'a issumnikka?
- c. (Hongch'ahago insamch'a issūmnida.)
Insam yongoro mwomnikka?
- d. (Yōngōro "ginseng"-imnida.)
Algessumnida. Hanjan chushipshio.
(Ne. Arassumnida.)

Exercise 12

- (Igō susōn haseyo.)
Igō susōn haji maseyo.
- (Chōl ttara oseyo.)
Chōl ttara oji maseyo.
- (Nūtke oseyo.)
Nūtke oji maseyo.
- (Kunbok chōgō tariseyo.)
Kunbok chogo tariji maseyo.
- (Ibaji set'ak haseyo.)
Ibaji set'ak haji maseyo.

Exercise 13

- a. (Harris taewinim, ibōn chumare pappūshimnikka?)
An pappūmnida.
- b. (Kūrōm, chōnyōk kach'i hapshida.)
Chossūmnida. Musūn yoireyo?
- c. (T'oyoil ōttōssūmnikka?)
Chossūmnida. Myōtshieyo?
- d. (Ilgopshi ōttōssūmnikka?)
Ne. Algessūmnida.

UNIT 7, LESSON 2

Exercise 2

(Kalbi mashi òttòssūmnikka?)
How does the kalbi taste?

(Igimch'i pyōllo an maepsūmnida.)
This kimchi is not really hot.

(Pulgogi pækpan òttòssūmnikka?)
How about the pulgogi dinner?

(Chōdo kalbi hagesūmnida.)
I'll have kalbi too.

(Agassi! Maekchu tubyōng chushipshio.)
Miss! Two bottles of beer, please.

Exercise 3

Iūmshikaju maepsūmnikka? OR Ūmshik igōaju maepsūmnikka?

Pulgogi pækpan maepsūmnikka?

Kalbi saminbun chushipshio.

Igō sogogimnikka?

Agassi! O.B. maekchu tubyōng chushipshio.

Exercise 5

a. (Harris taewinim, musūn ūmshik choahashimnikka?)
Miguk ūmshik choahamnida.

b. (Hanguk ūmshikdo choahashimnikka?)
Mullonimnida.

c. (Hanguk ūmshik mwō choahashimnikka?)
Pulgogiaju mashi issūmnida.

d. (Kimch'inūn òttòssūmnikka?)
Kimch'i nōmu maepsūmnida.

Exercise 6

(Pibimpap mashi issūmnida.)
Pibimpap tastes good.

(Igō musūn kogimnikka?)
What kind of meat is this?

(Komt'ang hanbōn haeboshipshio.)
Try some komt'ang some time.

(Mandukuk an maepsūmnida.)
Wonton soup is not hot.

(Kalbitchim irinbun chushipshio.)
Give me one order of kalbitchim.

(Chōnūn takkogihago twaejigogi choahamnida.)
I like chicken and pork.

Exercise 7

Mandukukhago maekchu chushipshio.

Kalbitchim saminbun ōlmamnikka?

Komt'ang sogogimnikka?

Twaejigogi choahashimnikka?

Agassi! Kyesansō chushipshio.

Exercise 9

(Kimch'i maepsūmnida.)
Kimch'i an maepsūmnida.

(K'ōp'i hamnida.)
K'ōp'i an hamnida.

(Sagwa jyusū issūmnida.)
Sagwa jyusū ōpsūmnida.

(Sogogi mashi chossūmnida.)
Sogogi mashi an chossūmnida.

(Chibe kamnida.)
Chibe an kamnida.

Exercise 12

- a. (Mwō hashigessūmnikka?)
Mwō issūmnikka?
- b. (Pulgogihago kalbi issūmnida.)
Kalbi sogogimnikka?
- c. (Ne. Kūrōssūmnida.)
Kalbi maepsūmnikka?
- d. (An maepsūmnida.)
Kūrōm, kalbi pækpan hagessūmnida.
- e. (Ne. Arassūmnida.)
Maekchudo hanbyōng chushipshio.

UNIT 7, LESSON 3

Exercise 2

(Musūn sul choahashimnikka?)
What kind of alcoholic beverage do you like?

(Maekchu hanbyōng tō chushipshio.)
Please give me one more bottle of beer.

(Mullon hanguk ūmshik mōkkessūmnida.)
Of course I'll eat Korean food.

(Pulgogi iinbun tō chushipshio.)
Please give us two more orders of pulgogi.

(Kalbi pyōllo an maepsūmnida.)
Kalbi is not really hot.

(Soju mashiji maseyo.)
Don't drink soju.

Exercise 3

Onūl soju mashigessūmnida.

Kanjang yōngōro mwōmnikka?

Pap chom tō chushipshio.

K'ollahago saidado chushipshio.

Maekchu chossūmnida. Hanbōn haeboshipshio.

Exercise 4

- a. (Myōtpunimnikka?)
Sesaramimnida.
- b. (Mwō hashigessūmnikka?)
Kalbitchimhago pulgogi mōkkessūmnida. OR
Kalbitchimhago pulgogi hagessūmnida.
- c. (Maekchudo hashigessūmnikka?)
Aniyo. Soju mashigessūmnida.
- d. (Papdo hashigessūmnikka?)
Pap p'iryō ōpsūmnida.

Exercise 7

Yōgi huch'u ōpsūmnida.
P'ok'ū p'iryō ōpsūmnida.
P'odoju mashi chossūmnida.
Naepk'in chom tō chushipshio.
Mul hanjan chushipshio.

Exercise 8

(Ne. Soju mashi issūmnida.)
Soju mashi issūmnikka?

(Inamul an maepsūmnida.)
Namul maepsūmnikka?

(Igō maekchumnida.)
Musūn surimnikka?

(Onūl pang mani issūmnida.)
Onūl pang issūmnikka?

(Hangungmallo kanjangimnida.)
"Soy sauce" hangungmallo mwōmnikka?

Exercise 9

(Maekchu mashimnida.)
Maekchu mashipshida.

(Kach'i shinae kugyōng kamnida.)
Kach'i shinae kugyōng kapshida.

(Iryoire mannamnida.)
Iryoire mannashida.

(Ohu yōsōtshie kamnida.)
Ohu yōsōtshie kapshida.

(Kūkchang kugyōng kamnida.)
Kūkchang kugyōng kapshida.

(Tabangesō k'ōp'i hamnida.)
Tabangesō k'ōp'i hapshida.

Exercise 12

- a. (Mwō hashigessūmnikka?)
Kalbi saminbun chushipshio.
- b. (Ne. Papdo hashigessūmnikka?)
Ne. Suldo mashigessūmnida.
- c. (Musūn sulyo?)
Makkōllihago p'odoju chushipshio.
- d. (Ne. Arassūmnida.)
Hwajangshil ōdi issūmnikka?
- e. (Ibang yōp'e issūmnida.)
Kamsahamnida. OR Komapsūmnida.

Unit 7 Self-evaluation Quiz

1. a. (Mwō hashigessūmnikka?)
What would you like?
- b. K'ōp'i sejanhago hongch'a tujan chushipshio. OR
K'ōp'i sejanhago hongch'a tujan hagesūmnida.
- c. Aniyō. K'ūrimhago sōlt'ang p'iryō ōpsūmnida.

2. a. Modu tasōtsaramimnida. Onūl pang issūmnikka?
- b. (Suldo hashigessūmnikka?)
Would you like some drinks too?
- c. Soju mashipshida.
- d. Sogūmhago huch'u chushipshio. OR Yōgi sogūmhago
huch'u chushipshio.

3. a. Kimch'ihago kanjang chom tō chushipshio.
- b. Yōboseyo! Agassi! Chaettōri chom chushipshio.
- c. Aniyō. Sōngnyang p'iryō ōpsūmnida.
- d. Soju tubyōng tō chushipshio.

4. a. (Chōnūn kalbi paekban mōkkessūmnida.)
I'm going to have the kalbi dinner.
- b. Musūn kogimnikka? Twaejigogimnikka?
- c. (Aniyō. Sogogimnida.)
No. It's beef.
- d. Ne. Algessūmnida. Kalbi maepsūmnikka?

5. a. Shillejiman, igō hangungmallo mwōmnikka?
- b. (Mandukuk yōngōro mwōmnikka?)
What is mandukuk in English?
- c. "Wonton soup"-imnida. OR Yōngōro "wonton soup"-imnida.
- d. Yōboseyo! Agassi! Kyesansō chushipshio.

UNIT 8, LESSON 1

Exercise 2

(Sōnsaengnim, ōdikkaji kashimnikka?)

Sir, how far are you going?

(Ōdisō naerishigessūmnikka?)

Where would you like to get out?

(Migunbudaekkaji kashimnikka?)

Are you going to the American military post?

(Paekhwajōmesō naerishigessūmnikka?)

Would you like to get out at the department store?

(Yosae t'aekshi yogūm an pissamnida.)

These days taxi fares are not expensive.

(Seoulkkaji t'aekshi yogūm samch'ōnwōnimnida.)

The taxi fare to Seoul is 3,000 won.

Exercise 3

Migunbudae chōngmunkkaji kapshida.

Tongdaemūn shijangkkaji kapshida.

Chōngmunkkaji t'aekshi yogūm ōlmamnikka?

Paro chōgisō naerigessūmnida.

Paehwajōm paro ap'esō naerigessūmnida.

Exercise 4

a. T'aekshi!

b. (Ōdikkaji kashimnikka?)

Seoul yōk kapshida. OR Seoul yōk-kkaji kapshida.

c. (Arassūmnida. Ōdisō naerishigessūmnikka?)

Seoul yōk paro ap'esō naerigessūmnida.

d. (Ne.)

Ōlmamnikka? OR Yogūm ōlmamnikka?

- e. (Kubaegwōnimnida.)
 Yōgi issūmnida. Sugo haessūmnida.
 (Ne. Annyōngghi kashipshio.)

Exercise 7

Osan konggungiji kapshida. OR Osangiji kapshida.

Seouresō Songt'ankkaji yogūm ōlmamnikka?

Pudae chōngmun paro ap'esō naerigessūmnida. OR
 Kiji chōngmun paro ap'esō naerigessūmnida.

Isadankkaji kamnida.

Yōsōtshikkaji oshipshio.

Exercise 13

Yōgisō ōdikkaji kashimnikka?

Isadan chōngmunkkaji kapshida.

Myōtshie Osan konggungijie kashimnikka?

Ojōn yōdōlshikkaji kaya twemnida.

Ipōsū Tongdūch'ōne kamnikka?

Exercise 14

a. Ipōsū Ūijōngbue kamnikka?

b. (Ne.)
 Yogūm ōlmamnikka?

c. (Kūlsseyo... Ōdisō naerishigessūmnikka?)
 Migunbudae ap'esō naerigessūmnida.

d. (Kūrōm, yogūm yukpaegwōnimnida.)
 Ūijōngbukkaji shigan ōlmana kōllimnikka?

e. (Sashippun kōllimnida.)
 Kamsahamnida.

UNIT 8, LESSON 2

Exercise 2

(Tongdunch'ōnkajji pōsū yogūm ōlmamnikka?)
How much is the bus fare to Tongdunch'on?

(Seoulhaeng maep'yogu araech'ūnge issūmnida.)
The ticket window for the bus to Seoul is downstairs.

(Ipōsū chōnyōk nūtke toch'ak hamnida.)
This bus arrives late in the evening.

(Kūrōnde, Ūijōngbuhaeng pōsū chigūm ch'ulbal hamnikka?)
By the way, is the Ūijōngbu bus leaving now?

(Onūl ohue Osanhaeng pōsū ōpsūmnida.)
There's no bus to Osan this afternoon.

Exercise 3

Pusanhaeng pōsū maep'yogu ōdi issūmnikka?

Pusankkajji yogūm ōlmamnikka? OR Pusan yogūm ōlmamnikka?

Pōsū myōtshie Osane toch'ak hamnikka?

Pōsū chigūm ch'ulbal hamnikka?

Taūm pōsū myōtshie ch'ulbal hamnikka?

Exercise 5

- a. Inch'ōnkajji yogūm ōlmamnikka? OR Inch'ōn yogūm ōlmamnikka?
- b. (Ch'ōnp'albaegwōnimnida.)
Tujang chushipshio. Kūrōnde, pōsū myōtchie ch'ulbal hamnikka?
- c. (Tushi bane ch'ulbal hamnida.)
Inch'ōnkajji myōtshigan kōllimnikka?
- d. (Hanshigan kōllimnida.)
Ōnū pōsūmnikka?
(Ch'ōtchae pōsūmnida.)

Exercise 7

(Pusanhaeng ch'ulbal hamnida.)
Pusanhaeng ch'ulbal haessūmnida.

(Hanguge toch'ak hamnida.)
Hanguge toch'ak haessūmnida.

(Inch'ōnhaeng seshie ch'ulbal hamnida.)
Inch'ōnhaeng seshie ch'ulbal haessūmnida.

(Chōnūn kyōlhon hamnida.)
Chōnūn kyōlhon haessūmnida.

Exercise 8

(Pusanhaeng ch'ulbal haessūmnida.)
Pusanhaeng ch'ulbal an haessūmnida.

(Pōsū toch'ak haessūmnida.)
Pōsū toch'ak an haessūmnida.

(Inch'ōnhaeng pōsū ch'ulbal haessūmnida.)
Inch'ōnhaeng pōsū ch'ulbal an haessūmnida.

(Chōnūn kyōlhon haessūmnida.)
Chōnūn kyōlhon an haessūmnida.

Exercise 11

(Seouresō Pusankkaji kich'a yogūm ōlmamnikka?)
How much is the train fare from Seoul to Pusan?

(Pusanhaeng t'ūkkūp myōtshie ch'ulbal hamnikka?)
What time does the express train to Pusan leave?

(Saemaūlho ōnū kich'amnikka?)
Which train is the Saemaūl?

(Inch'ōnkkaji kosokpōsū yogūm ch'ōnsabaegwōnimnida.)
The express bus fare to Inch'on is 1,400 won.

(Pot'ongshilp'yo hanjang sagessūmnida.)
I'll buy one coach ticket.

(T'ūkkūpp'yo yōgisō samnikka?)
Do I buy express tickets here?

Exercise 13

(Kosokpōsū neshibane toch'ak hamnida.)
Kosokpōsū myōtshie toch'ak hamnikka?

(Kich'ap'yo chōmaep'yoguesō sashipshio.)
Kich'ap'yo ōdisō samnikka?

(Saemaūlho ch'ulbal an haessūmnida.)
Saemaūlho ch'ulbal haessūmnikka?

(Mianhamnida. T'ūkshilp'yo ōpsūmnida.)
T'ūkshilp'yo issūmnikka?

(Ne. Saemaūlho hanshie ch'ulbal hamnida.)
Saemaūlho hanshie ch'ulbal hamnikka?

Exercise 14

Saemaūlho myōtshie ch'ulbal hamnikka?

Saemaūlho toch'ak haessūmnikka?

Osankkaji kosokpōsū yogūm ōlmamnikka?

Pot'ongshilp'yo tujang chushipshio.

Ūijōngbuhaeng ōnū pōsūmnikka?

Exercise 15

a. Taūm Saemaūlho myōtshie ch'ulbal hamnikka?

b. (Ohu hanshie issūmnida.)
Pusankkaji pot'ongshil yogūm ōlmamnikka?

c. (Man p'alch'ōnwōnimnida.)
Tujang chushipshio. Samman yukch'ōnwōn yōgi issūmnida.

d. (Ne.)
Myōtshie Pusane toch'ak hamnikka?

e. (Yōsōtshi bane toch'ak hamnida.)
Kamsahamnida.

UNIT 8, LESSON 3

Exercise 3

(Chōpōsū Tongdaemun shijang kamnikka?)
Does that bus go to the Tongdaemun Market?

(Yukshippōn pōsū t'aya twemnida.)
You have to take the number 60 bus.

(Chōgi tabang ap'esō naerishipshio.)
Get off in front of the coffee shop over there.

(Ōnū kich'a Pusanhaengimnikka?)
Which train is the one to Pusan?

(Aigu! Nōmu pissamnida. Chom tō ssage hapshida.)
Oh, wow! That's too expensive. Let's make it a little cheaper.

Exercise 5

Ipōsū t'aya twemnida.

Uri isadan chōngmunkkaji kamnida.

"Celadon" hangungmallo mwōmnikka?

Chom tō ssage hapshida.

Posōkhamhago ch'ōngja chushipshio.

Exercise 6

- a. Ōnū pōsū Tongduch'ōn kamnikka?
- b. (Chōgi ch'ōtchae pōsū t'ashipshio.)
Ne. Algessūmnida. Kamsahamnida.
- c. (Ch'ōnmaneyo.)
Agassi! Uri migunbudae chōngmunkkaji kamnida.
- d. (Kūrōm, tultchaesō naerishipshio.)
Ne. Arassūmnida. OR Ne. Algessūmnida.

Exercise 8

(Notkūrūt igō ōlmamnikka?)
How much is this brass bowl?

(Chōnotchōpshi chom popshida.)
Let me see that brass plate.

(Inhyōng tugae sagessūmnida.)
I'll buy two dolls.

(Changgi settū manich'ōnwōnimnida.)
The chess set is 12,000 won.

(Ppalgansaek shilk'ū brausū igō aju chossūmnida.)
This red silk blouse is very nice.

(P'aransaek kabang igō an pissamnida.)
This blue bag is not expensive.

Exercise 10

Changgi settū igō manwōne hapshida.

Inhyōng igō negae chushipshio.

Aigu! Nōmu pissamnida. P'alch'ōnwōn ōttōssūmnikka?

Notchōpshihago changgi settū sagessūmnida.

Exercise 12

(Samnida.)
Saya twemnida.

(Kamnida.)
Kaya twemnida.

(T'amnida.)
T'aya twemnida.

(Naerimnida.)
Naeryōya twemnida.

(Hamnida.)
Haeya twemnida.

Exercise 13

(Samnida.)
Sagessūmnida.

(T'amnida.)
T'agessūmnida.

(Naerimnida.)
Naerigessūmnida.

(Hamnida.)
Hagessūmnida.

Exercise 14

T'aekshi t'aya twemnida.

Paro yōgisō naeryōya twemnida.

Kabang hana sagessūmnida. OR Kabang sagessūmnida.

Ibrausū saji maseyo. Nōmu k'ūmnida.

Musūn inhyōng choahashimnikka?

Exercise 16

(Ne. Kabang sagessūmnida.)
Kabang sashigessūmnikka?

(Ne. Pulgogi hagessūmnida.)
Pulgogi hashigessūmnikka?

(Ne. Kohyange kagessūmnida.)
Kohyange kashigessūmnikka?

(Ne. Yōgisō naerigessūmnida.)
Yōgisō naerishigessūmnikka?

Exercise 17

- a. (Ōsō oshipshio. Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?)
Notkūrūthago changgi settū chom popshida.
- b. (Yōgi mani issūmnida.)
Changgi settū igō ōlmamnikka?
- c. (Sammanwōnimnida.)
Aigu! Nōmu pissamnida. Kūrōm, chōnotkūrūt ōlmamnikka?
- d. (Kuch'ōn obaegwōnimnida.)
Notkūrūtdo nōmu pissamnida.
- e. (Kūrōm, ōlma chushigessūmnikka?)
P'alch'ōn obaegwōne hapshida. OR
P'alch'ōn obaegwōn ōttōssūmnikka?
- f. (Chossūmnida.)
Yōgi issūmnida.

UNIT 8, LESSON 4

Exercise 4

(Kyesansō yōgi issūmnida.)
Here is the check.

(Seouresō ōnū hot'el chossūmnikka?)
What's a good hotel in Seoul?

(Uri aidūl kimch'i an choahamnida.)
My children don't like kimchi.

(Ibōn chumare kūkchange kapshida.)
Let's go to the theater this weekend.

(Chōnūn kanjang p'iryo ōpsūmnida.)
I don't need any soy sauce.

Exercise 5

Tabang ap'esō naerigessūmnida.

Iūmshikchōm yumyōng hamnikka?

Kūrōnde, Naija hot'el ōdi issūmnikka?

K'ūrimhago sōltang chom tō chushipshio.

Onūl mandukuk hagessūmnida. OR Onūl mandukuk mōkkessūmnida.

Exercise 6

a. Myōngdong kapshida.

b. (Ne. Migukpunishimnikka?)
Kūrōssūmnida. OR Ne. Kūrōssūmnida.

c. (Ōnje hanguge oshyōssūmnikka?)
Changnyōn shiwōre wassūmnida.

d. (Kūrōm, hanguk ūmshik ōttōssūmnikka?)
Aju choahamnida. OR Hanguk ūmshik aju choahamnida.

e. (Ōdisō naerishigessūmnikka?)
Paekhwajōm ap'esō naerigessūmnida.

Exercise 8

Samyōnjōne kyōlhon haessūmnida.
 Ibōn chumare pappūshimnikka?
 Onūl ohu neshie kagessūmnida.
 Taūm chue kūkchange kach'i kapshida.
 Naeil chōnyōge mwō hashimnikka?

Exercise 10

Uri namp'yōn konggun hasagwanimnida.
 Pumonim ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?
 Puindo miguk ūmshik choahashimnikka? OR
 Samonimdo miguk ūmshik choahashimnikka?
 Adūl hana ttal tul issūmnida.
 Aidūldo hanguge kach'i wassūmnida.

Exercise 11

- a. Pak soryōngnim, annyōnghashimnikka?
- b. (Ne. Oraeganmanimnida. Puin annyōnghashimnikka?)
 Ne. Samonim ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?
- c. (Chom pappūmnida. Kūrōnde, ibōn chumare mwō hashimnikka?)
 Pyōllo halil ōpsūmnida.
- d. (Kūrōm, chōnyōk kach'i hapshida.)
 Chossūmnida. Ōnjeyo? OR Kūrōpshida. Ōnjeyo?
- e. (T'oyoil yōsōtshi ōttōssūmnikka?)
 Algessūmnida. Samonimdo oshimnikka? OR
 Arassūmnida. Samonimdo oshimnikka?
- f. (Ne. Puindo kach'i oshipshio.)
 Kūrōm, t'oyoire pwepkessūmnida.
 (Ne. Tto pwepkessūmnida.)

Exercise 14

- a. (Ōsō oshipshio. Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?)
Panjihago mōkkōri chom popshida.
- b. (Yōgi mani issūmnida. 'Ipanjinūn aju chossūmnida.)
"Platinum" hangunqmallo mwōmnikka?
- c. (Paekkūmimnida.)
A, paekkūmyo? Algessūmnida. Ōlmamnikka?
- d. (Shibilmanwōnimnida.)
Kūrigo, paekkūmmōkkōri issūmnikka? OR Tto paekkūmmōkkōri
issūmnikka?
- e. (Ne. Igō ishipch'ilmanwōnimnida.)
Mōkkōri an sagessūmnida. Panji chushipshio.
(Ne. Kamsahamnida. Tto oshipshio.)

Unit 8 Self-evaluation Quiz

1.
 - a. (Ōdikkaji kashimnikka?)
Where are you going?
 - b. Osan konggungiji kapshida.
 - c. (Ōdisō naerishigessūmnikka?)
Where would you like to get out?
 - d. Chōngmun paro yōp'esō naerigessūmnida.
 - e. Sugo haessūmnida.

2.
 - a. Yōboseyo! Shillehamnida. Seoulhaeng pōsūp'yo ōdisō samnikka?
 - b. (Orūntchok ch'ōtchae maep'yoguesō sashipshio.)
You can buy them at the first ticket window on the right.
 - c. Songt'anesō Seoulkkaji yogūm ōlmamnikka?
 - d. Tujang chushipshio. Pōsū myōtshie ch'ulbal hamnikka?
OR Tujang chushipshio. Kūrōnde, Seoulhaeng myōtshie ch'ulbal hamnikka?
 - e. Myōtshie toch'ak hamnikka? OR Seoure myōtshie toch'ak hamnikka?

3.
 - a. Yōgisō ōnū hanguk ūmshikchōm chossūmnikka?
 - b. (Chōūmshikchōm aju yumyōng hamnida.)
That restaurant is very famous.
 - c. Pibimpaphago kalbi paekban chushipshio. KŪrigo O.B. maekchu tubyōng chushipshio.
 - d. (Hangungmal chal hashimnida. Ōnje hanguge oshyōssūmnikka?)
You speak Korean well. When did you come to Korea?
 - e. Changnyōne yōgi wassūmnida.

4. a. Uri Pusankkaji kamnida. T'ūkshilp'yo ōlmamnikka?
b. (Mianhamnida. Saemaūlho ishhipunjōne ch'ulbal haess-
ūmnida.)
The Saemaūl train left 20 minutes ago.
c. (T'ūkkūp yōlch'a hana issūmnida. Kot ch'ulbal hamnida.)
There is an express train. It leaves right away.
d. Seouresō Pusankkaji myōtshigan kōllimnikka? OR
Seouresō Pusankkaji shigan ōlmana kōllimnikka?
e. Ōnū kich'amnikka?
5. a. Igō hangungmallo mwōmnikka?
b. (Notchōpshimnida.)
A, notchōpshiyo? Algessūmnida. Ōlmamnikka?
c. Nōmu pissamnida. Chom tō ssage hapshida.
d. (Ōlma chushigessūmnikka?)
How much will you give me?
e. Ch'ilch'ōn obaegwōn ōttōssūmnikka?

KOREAN - ENGLISH
GLOSSARY

A

		UNIT/LESSON
a	oh (exclamation)	1/3
adūl	son(s)	5/1
agassi	miss (used to address young females)	7/2
ai	child	5/1
aidūl	children	
Aigu!	Oh, wow! Gosh! Oh, no! Ouch!	8/3
ajik	still; yet	1/3
aju	very; very much; really	3/3
Algessūmnida.	I see; I understand.	1/3
an	not (used only with verbs)	1/1
aniyo	no	1/3
Annyōnghashimnikka?	Hello; Good morning; Good afternoon; Good evening.	1/1
Annyōngghi kashipshio.	Good-bye. (to the person leaving)	1/4
Annyōngghi kyeshipshio.	Good-bye. (to the person staying behind)	1/4
ap'	front; the front side	8/1
-ap'esō	in front of	
araech'ūng	downstairs; lower level	6/1

Arassūmnida.	I understand; I see; All right.	5/2
B		
baji	pants; trousers	3/3
-ban	half-past (the hour)	4/1
hanshiban	half-past one	
-bul	dollar(s) (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	2/3
Ilbul hangukton ōlmamnikka?	How much is a dollar in Korean money?	
-bun	person(s)	2/1
-byōng	bottle(s) (used with native Korean numbers)	2/2
C		
ch'a	tea (generic term)	7/1
chaettōri	ashtray	7/1
chagae	mother-of-pearl	8/3
chagae posōkham	a mother-of-pearl jewelry box	
ch'ajūshimnikka	are (you) looking for	2/3
chaksūmnida	(is) small	3/3
chal	well; fine; satisfactorily	1/1
changgi settū	chess set	8/3
changgyo	officer	1/3
changnyōn	last year	4/3

ch'atsūmnida	(am) looking for	2/3
che	my	1/2
chigap	wallet	6/3
chigūm	now	4/1
chihado	underpass; underground walkway	6/2
ch'imdae	bed	2/3
chinaemnida	(am) getting along	1/1
Ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?	How are (you) getting along?	
ch'ingu	friend	1/2
chip	house; home	5/1
chipsaram	wife (one's own wife)	5/1
ch'irwōl	July	4/2
choahamnida	like; enjoy	5/2
chōdo	I, too; me, too	7/2
chōgi	there; over there (away from the people talking)	3/1
chōgō	that; that one; that thing; those; those things	5/3
chōl	me (as opposed to <u>chonun</u> , "I")	6/3
chom	a little; a little bit (also used in requests to be polite)	1/4
Chom tō chushipshio.	Please give me a little more.	
Tamnyo chom popshida.	Let me see some blankets.	
Chom towa chushipshio.	Please help me; Can you help me?	

Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida.	Pleased to meet you; How do you do?	1/2
-chōn	cent(s) (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	2/3
ch'ōnch'ōnhi	slowly	6/1
ch'ōngbaji	blue jeans	3/3
ch'ōngja	celadon porcelain; an item made of celadon; a celadon vase	8/3
chōngmun	main gate; main door	8/1
chōnhwa	telephone	6/3
Ch'ōnmaneyo.	You're welcome.	6/2
chōnūn	I	1/3
chōnyōk	evening	5/2
chōnyōge	in the evening	
chōnyōk	dinner; supper	5/2
Chōnyōk kach'i hapshida.	Let's have dinner together.	
ch'oroksaek	green	3/2
chossūmnida	(is) good; great	3/2
ch'ōtchae	first; the first (one)	6/1
chuimsangsa	E-9; SGM (Army)	1/3
ch'ulbal hamnida	(it) leaves; departs	8/2
chumare	weekend; during the weekend	5/2
ibōn chumare	this weekend	
taūm chumare	next weekend	

GLOSSARY

KOREAN-ENGLISH

chungryōng	0-5; LTC (Army)	1/1
chungsa	E-7; SFC (Army)	1/3
chungwi	0-2; 1LT (Army)	1/1
chunwi	warrant officer	1/1
chushigessūmnikka	will you give; would you give	8/3
ōlma chushigessūmnikka?	How much will you give me?	
chushipshio	please give me	2/1
	D	
-do	too; also	5/1
	E	
emp'i	military police; MP(s)	6/3
	G	
-gae	counter for objects (used with native Korean numbers)	2/1
-gap	pack(s) of cigarettes (used with native Korean numbers)	3/1
	H	
haebyōng	Marine; Marine Corps personnel	1/3
haebyōngdae	Marine Corps	1/3
haegun	Navy; Navy personnel	1/3

-haeng	bound for; going to	8/2
Pusanhaeng pōsū	the bus to Pusan	
haessūmnida	did; have done	5/1
haeya twemnida	have to do; must do	5/3
hagessūmnida	will do; am going to (do)	5/3
hagessūmnida	will have (something to eat or drink)	7/1
-hago	and (used between names of people or things)	3/2
haji maseyo	don't (do)	5/3
halil	things to do; work to do	5/2
hamnida	(am) doing	3/2
han	about; approximately (used before number expressions)	6/2
hanbōn	once; one time; some time	6/1
Hanbōn haeboshipshio.	Try it some time.	
hanguk	Korea	2/3
hangukton	Korean money	2/3
hangungmal	Korean; the Korean language	7/1
hangungmallo	in Korean	
hapshida	let's do; let's make	3/2
Sammanwōne hapshida.	Let's make it 30,000 won.	
hasa	E-6; SSG (Army)	1/3
hasagwan	NCO; petty officer	1/3
haseyo	please do (informal version)	5/3
hashyōssūmnikka	have (you) done	1/3

hinsaek	white	3/2
hongch'a	black tea	7/1
hōritti	belt	5/3
hot'el	hotel	6/1
huch'u	black pepper	7/3
hwajangshil	rest room	6/1
hwannyul	exchange rate	2/3
Hwannyul ōlmamnikka?	What is the exchange rate?	
hwayoil	Tuesday	4/2
I		
ibōboshipshio	please try on (clothing)	3/3
ibugūne	in this area; in this vicinity; around here	6/3
ibul	quilt(s)	3/2
ibyōng	E-2; PV2 (Army)	1/2
igō	this; this one; this thing; these; these things	2/3
il	matter; thing; problem	6/3
Musūn irimnikka?	What's the matter?	
ilbyōng	E-3; PFC (Army)	1/2
iltchigi	early (used only with verbs)	5/3
-imnida	(I) am; he/she/it is, etc.	1/2
-inbun	order(s); serving(s) (of food) (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	7/2
inhyōng	doll(s); figurine(s)	8/3
insamch'a	ginseng tea	7/1

iri	here; this way; this direction; towards me	5/3
irōssūmnida	lost; have lost (something)	6/3
Chigap irōssūmnida.	I lost my wallet.	
irwōl	January	4/2
iryoil	Sunday	4/2
isadan	second division	8/1
issūmnida	there is/are; (I) have	2/1
ittaga	later	1/4
iwōl	February	4/2

J

-jan	cup(s); glass(es) (used with native Korean numbers)	2/2
-jang	counter for tickets (used with native Korean numbers)	8/2
-ji maseyo	don't (do)	5/3
Ikunbok tariji maseyo.	Don't iron this uniform.	
-jōn	before; ago	4/1
tushi shippunjōn	10 minutes before 2:00	
Sanyōnjōne haessūmnida.	I did it four years ago.	
jyusū	juice	7/1

K

kabang	bag; satchel; suitcase	8/3
kach'i	together; along (with)	5/1
kagessūmnida	(am) going to go; will go	1/4

kalbi	beef ribs, marinated and barbecued	5/2
kalbitchim	beef rib stew	7/2
kamnida	(am) going	5/2
Kamsahamnida.	Thank you.	3/1
kanjang	soy sauce	7/3
kapshi	price	2/2
Kapshi ōlmamnikka?	How much is the price?	
kapshida	let's go; (to a taxi driver) take me to	5/2
kashipshio	go; please go	1/4
kich'a	train	8/2
kich'ap'yo	train ticket(s)	
kiji	base (usually an Air Force or Navy base)	8/1
kil	way; street; road	6/3
Kil irōssumnida.	I'm lost.	
kimch'i	pickled vegetables, generally cabbage	5/2
kkaji	to; up to; as far as (destination); by (time)	8/1
Seoulkkaji kamnida.	I'm going to Seoul.	
Neshikkaji oshipshio.	Please come by 4:00.	
kkamansaek	black	3/2
kogi	meat	7/2
kohyang	hometown	5/1
k'olla	cola (any brand)	3/1

Kollanhamnida.	It's difficult; That's hard to do; No way!	3/2
kōllimnida	it takes (amount of time)	4/1
Komapsūmnida.	Thank you.	3/1
komt'ang	rice with thick soup made from beef bones	7/2
konggun	Air Force; Air Force personnel	1/3
konggungiji	airbase (AB)	
k'ōp'i	coffee	2/2
kosokpōsū	express bus	8/2
kot	right away; immediately	5/3
kuḍu	shoes	5/3
kugyōng	watching; sightseeing; browsing; window-shopping	5/2
kūjō	just; merely	1/2
Kūjō kūrōssūmnida.	So-so.	
kūkchang	movie theater; theater	5/2
kūkchang kugyōng	watching a movie	
Kūlsseyo...	Well, I'm not so sure...	3/3
kūm	gold	3/3
kūmbanji	gold ring	
kūmmokkōri	gold necklace	
kūmshigye	gold watch	
k'ūmnida	(is) big; large	3/3
kūmnyōn	this year	4/3
kūmyoil	Friday	4/2
kunbok	military uniform(s)	5/3

kunhwa	military boots	5/3
kunin	service member; a person serving in the military (regardless of service)	1/3
kūnmu hamnida	works; performs duty	5/3
kūrigo	and; besides; in addition	3/1
k'ūrim	cream	7/1
kūrōm	well; well then	1/3
kūrōmyōn	then; if you do that, then	6/2
kūrōnde	by the way; incidentally	8/2
kūrōnikka	so; therefore; accordingly	2/3
kūrōpshida	let's; let's do so	5/2
Kūrōssūmnida.	That's so; That's correct; That's right.	1/2
Kūrōssūmnikka?	Is that so? Really?	1/3
kuwōl	September	4/2
kyegūpchang	insignia of rank	5/3
kyesansō	check; bill	7/2
kyeshimnida	there is/are (used only for people)	2/1
kyōlhon	marriage	1/3
Kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?	Are you married?	

M

maekchu	beer (generally, bottled beer)	3/1
maepsūmnida	is hot (spicy)	7/2
maep'yogu	ticket window	8/2
makkōli	rice wine (unrefined)	7/3

malssūmhae chushipshio	please say; please tell me	6/1
mandukuk	wonton soup	7/2
mani	lots of; a lot of; many (used only with verbs)	3/2
mannapshida	let's meet	5/2
mashi	taste; flavor	5/2
Mashi chossūmnida.	It tastes good.	
Mashi issūmnida.	It's delicious.	
mashigessūmnida	will drink; am going to drink	7/3
mashipshida	let's drink	7/3
matsūmnida	(it) fits	3/3
Mianhamnida.	I'm sorry.	6/1
miguk	America; the United States	2/3
migukkunin	American service member; a member of the U.S. military	5/1
migukpun	American (person)	8/4
miguksaram	American (person)	5/1
migukton	American money	2/3
Migukton ōlmamnikka?	How much is it in American money?	
migun	American military; U.S. Armed Forces	6/3
migunbudaē	American military installation	
Mihonimnida.	(I'm) single.	1/3
milgam	tangerine(s)	2/1
minganin	civilian (person)	1/3
misū	miss (form of address)	1/2

misūt'ō	mr. (used to address adult males junior to you in age or status)	1/2
modu	all; altogether	3/1
mogyoil	Thursday	4/2
mōkkessūmnida	(I) will eat; will have	7/3
mokkōri	necklace	3/3
morūgessūmnida	(I) don't know	6/3
mot	cannot	6/3
Chal mot hamnida.	I can't (do it).	6/3
mul	water	7/3
mullon	of course; certainly; naturally	1/3
Mullonimnida.	Of course (it's so).	
musūn	what kind of; what	4/2
Musūn irimnikka?	What's the matter?	
Musūn yoirimnikka?	What day of the week is it?	
mwō	what	2/3
Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?	What are you looking for? May I help you?	
Mwō hashigessūmnikka?	What would you like to have? (to eat or drink)	
myōch'il	what date	4/2
Onūl myōch'irimnikka?	What's the date today?	
myōt	how many	2/1
myōtbun	how many persons	
myōtgae	how many (of them)	
myōtsaram	how many persons	

myōtshi	what time	
Myōtshieyo?	What time? At what time?	
myōtshigan	how many hours	
Myōtshimnikka?	What time is it?	
N		
naeil	tomorrow	1/4
naenyōn	next year	4/3
naepk'in	napkin	7/3
naerigessūmnida	(I) will get out (from a vehicle)	8/1
naeryōya twemnida	(I) have to get out	
naip'ū	knife	7/3
namp'yōn	husband (one's own husband)	5/1
namul	vegetable side dishes	7/3
ne	yes	1/1
negōri	intersection	6/2
chōnegōriesō	at that intersection over there	
nōmu	too (as in too large, too small, etc.)	3/3
noransaek	yellow	3/2
notchōpshi	brass plate	8/3
notkūrūt	brass bowl	8/3
nugu	who; whom; someone; anyone	6/3
Nugu yōngō hashimnikka?	Does anyone (here) speak English?	

nūtke	late (used only with verbs)	5/3
-nyōn	year(s); counter for years (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	4/3
	0	
ōdi	where; what place	5/1
ōdisō	at/from what place	
ohu	afternoon; p.m.	4/1
ojōn	morning; a.m.	4/1
ōlmamnikka	how much is/are	2/2
ōlmana	how much	6/2
omnida	(am) coming	5/3
ōnje	when	4/2
ōnū	which; which one	8/2
onūl	today	4/2
onūl chōnyōge	this evening	
ōpsūmnida	there isn't; (I) don't have	2/2
Oraeganmanimnida.	It's been a long time.	1/1
orenji	orange(s)	7/1
orenji jyusū	orange juice	
orenjisaek	orange (color)	
orūntchok	the right; right side	6/1
orūntchoge	on the right	
orūntchogūro	to the right	

oseyo	please come (informal version of <u>oshipshio</u>)	5/3
oshipshio	please come	2/3
oshyōssūmnikka	did (you) come	4/2
ōsō	quickly; right away	2/3
ōsō oshipshio.	Come right in.	
ōttōk'e	how	1/1
ōttōk'e kamnikka	how do I get to	
ōttōssūmnikka	how is; how about; what do you think of; how do you like	3/2
Samanwōn ōttōssūmnikka?	How about 40,000 won?	
Hanguk ōttōssūmnikka?	What do you think of Korea?	
owōl	May	4/2
	P	
p'ach'ulso	police substation	6/3
pae	pear(s)	2/1
paekhwajōm	department store	6/2
paekkūm	platinum; white gold	3/3
paekkūmbanji	platinum ring	
paekkūmmokkōri	platinum necklace	
-paekpan	full-course dinner (includes rice, soup and side dishes)	7/2
pulgogi paekpan	a full-course pulgogi dinner	
pang	room	6/1
panji	ring	3/3

GLOSSARY

KOREAN-ENGLISH

pap	cooked (steamed) rice	7/3
pappūmnida	(is) busy	1/1
p'aransaek	blue ("green" when describing grass, trees or leaves)	3/2
paro	right; just; exactly	8/1
p'arwōl	August	4/2
peijisaek	beige	3/2
pibimpap	rice with vegetables and meat	7/2
pilding	building	6/1
p'iryō	need; necessity	7/1
p'iryō ōpsūmnida	I don't need (any); there's no need for	
pissamnida	(is) expensive	3/3
p'odoju	wine	7/3
pogi	appearance	3/3
Aju pogi chossūmnida.	It looks really good.	
p'ok'ū	fork	7/3
-pon	number (used like a counter)	8/3
Paekshippōn t'ashipshio.	Get on number 110.	
popshida	let me see; let me look at	3/2
posōk	jewelry	3/3
posōkham	jewelry box	
pōsū	bus	2/2
pōsūp'yo	bus ticket(s)	
pōsū t'ōminal	bus terminal/station	
pōsū yogūm	bus fare	

pot'ongshil	coach (on "the Blue Train")	8/2
pot'ongshilp'yo	coach ticket(s)	
ppalgansaek	red	3/2
ppalli	quickly	5/3
pudae	military installation; post	6/3
puin	wife (someone else's) (form of address for a married woman)	5/1
pul	fire	6/3
Pul nassūmnida!	There's a fire!	
pulgogi	marinated and barbecued beef	5/2
pumonim	parents	5/1
-pun	minutes (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	4/1
pwepkessūmnida	will see; will meet	1/4
Tto pwepkessūmnida.	I'll see you again.	
pwepsūmnida	(I) see; meet	1/2
Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida.	Pleased to meet you.	
p'yo	ticket(s)	8/2
pyōllo	(not) really; (not) particularly	1/1
Pyōllo an pappūmnida.	I'm not really busy.	
pyōngjang	E-5; SGT (Army)	1/2
	S	
Saemaūlho	"the Blue Train"	8/2
saeng maekchu	draft beer	3/1
saengil	birthday	4/3

sagessūmnida	(am) going to buy; will buy	3/2
sagwa	apple(s)	2/1
sagwa jyusū	apple juice	
saida	lemon-lime soda	2/2
saijū	size	3/3
samnida	(am) buying	5/3
samonim	wife (someone else's wife) (polite form of address for a married woman)	5/1
samwōl	March	4/2
sangbyōng	E-4; SP4 (Army)	1/2
sangsa	E-8; MSG (Army)	1/3
-saram	person(s)	2/1
sashipshio	buy; please buy	8/2
sawōl	April	4/2
set'ak haseyo	please wash (clothes)	5/3
setchae	third; the third (one)	6/1
-shi	o'clock (used with Native Korean numbers)	4/1
shibirwōl	November	4/2
shibiwōl	December	4/2
shigan	hour(s); time (used with native Korean numbers)	4/1
myōtshigan	how many hours	
shigan ōlmana	how much time	
Shigan issūmnikka?	Do you have (any) time?	
shigye	watch; clock	2/1
shijang	market; marketplace	6/2

shiktang	restaurant; dining room; mess hall	6/1
shilk'ū brausū	silk blouse	8/3
Shillehamnida.	Excuse me.	6/1
Shillejiman,...	Excuse me, but...	1/3
shinae	downtown; a downtown area	5/2
shinhodūng	traffic signal; stop light	6/2
shiwōl	October	4/2
sogae hamnida	(am) introducing; let me introduce	1/2
sogogi	beef	7/2
sogūm	salt	7/3
soju	a strong, clear, distilled liquor	7/3
sōlt'ang	sugar	7/1
sōngnyang	matches	7/1
sōnsaeng	mr. (used to address adult males equal to you in age or status)	1/2
sōnsaengnim	mr.; sir (used to address adult males senior to you in age or status)	1/1
sop'a	sofa	2/3
soryōng	0-4; MAJ (Army)	1/1
sowi	0-1; 2LT (Army)	1/1
ssage	cheap (used only with verbs)	3/2

Igō ssage hapshida.

Let's make this cheap.

-ssik	each; per (used with native Korean numbers)	3/2
Hanassik chushipshio.	Give me one of each.	
Sugo haessūmnida.	Thank you.	5/3
sul	alcoholic beverages (generic)	7/3
susōn haseyo	please mend; fix	5/3
suyoil	Wednesday	4/2
	T	
tabang	coffee shop	6/1
t'aekshi	taxi	8/1
taeryōng	O-6; COL (Army)	1/1
taewi	O-3; CPT (Army)	1/1
takkgogi	chicken	7/2
tambae	cigarette(s)	2/2
tamnyo	blanket(s)	2/3
tariseyo	please iron; press	5/3
tashi	again (try again)	6/1
tashi hanbōn	once again; one more time	
t'ashipshio	please get on; board (a vehicle)	8/3
taūm	next; the next (one)	1/4
taūm chue	next week	
taūm chumare	next weekend	
taūm tare	next month	
t'aya twemnida	(I) have to take (a bus, train, etc.)	8/3

t'eibūl	table	2/3
tō	more	7/3
Chom tō chushipshio.	Bring me a little more, please.	
tōch'ak hamnida	(it) arrives	8/2
ton	money	2/3
toshipshio	turn; please turn	6/2
t'oyoil	Saturday	4/2
ttal	daughter(s)	5/1
ttara	following	6/3
Chōl ttara oshipshio.	Please follow me.	
tto	again; once more; in addition	1/4
Tto oshipshio.	Please come again.	
ttokparo	straight; straight ahead	6/2
t'ūkkūp	express	8/2
t'ūkkūp yōlch'a	express train	
t'ūkshil	first class (on "the Blue Train")	8/2
t'ūkshilp'yo	first class ticket	
tultchae	second; the second (one)	6/1
twaejigogi	pork	7/2
	U	
ūmshik	prepared (cooked) food	5/2
ūmshikchōm	restaurant	5/2
uri	we; our; my	5/1

W

Waeyo?	Why?	1/4
wassūmnida	(I) came	4/2
waya twemnida	(I) have to come	5/3
wentchok	the left; left side	6/1
wentchoge	on the left	
wentchogūro	to the left	
wich'ūng	upstairs; upper level	6/1
-wōl	month (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	4/2
-wōn	Korean monetary unit	2/2
wōryoil	Monday	4/2

Y

-ya twemnida	have to; must (do)	5/3
Kūnmu haeya twemnida.	I have to (go to) work.	
Yōboseyo!	Hello! Say! (to get someone's attention; not a greeting)	6/1
yōgi	here; this place (near the person talking)	2/3
yogūm	fare	2/2
yoil	day of the week	4/2
yōk	railroad station	6/2
yōlch'a	train	8/2

yōngō	English; the English language	6/3
Nugu yōngō hashimnikka?	Does anyone (here) speak English?	
yōngōro	in English	7/1
Yōngōro mwōmnikka?	What is it in English?	
yōp'	side	6/2
-yōp'e	by; next to	
yosae	these days; recently; lately; nowadays	1/1
yukkun	Army; Army personnel; soldier(s)	1/3
yukkyo	overpass; elevated walkway	6/2
yumyōng hamnida	(is) famous	8/4
yuwōl	June	4/2

ENGLISH-KOREAN
GLOSSARY

A

		UNIT/LESSON
about; approximately	han (used before number expressions)	6/2
afternoon; p.m.	ohu	4/1
in the afternoon	ohue	
again (try again)	tashi	6/1
once again; one more time	tashi hanbōn	
again; once more; in addition	tto	1/4
Air Force; Air Force personnel	konggun	1/3
air base (AB)	konggungiji	
alcoholic beverages	sul (generic term)	7/3
all; altogether	modu	3/1
America; the United States	miguk	2/3
American (person)	migukpun miguksaram	
American military; U.S. Armed Forces	migun	6/3
American military installation	migunbudae	
American money	migukton	2/3
How much is it in American money?	Migukton ōlmamnikka?	

American service member; member of the U.S. military	migukkunin	5/1
and	-hago (used between names of people or things)	3/2
and; in addition	kūrigo (used to begin a sentence)	3/1
anyone; someone	nugu	6/3
appearance	pogi	3/3
It looks really good.	Aju pogi chossūmnida.	
apple(s)	sagwa	2/1
apple juice	sagwa jyusū	
April	sawōl	4/2
Army; Army personnel; soldier(s)	yukkun	1/3
(to) arrive	toch'ak ha-	8/2
When does it arrive?	Ōnje toch'ak hamnikka?	
ashtray	chaettōri	7/1
August	p'arwōl	4/2
	B	
bag; suitcase	kabang	8/3
base (Air Force or Navy base)	kiji	8/1
(to) be	-i-	1/2
I'm an NCO.	Hasagwanimnida.	
Are you an officer?	Changgyoishimnikka?	
bed	ch'imdae	2/3
beef	sogogi	7/2

beef, marinated and barbecued	pulgogi	5/2
beer (generally, bottled beer)	maekchu	3/1
draft beer	saeng maekchu	
before; ago	-jōn	4/1
ten minutes before 2:00	tushi shippunjōn	
five years ago	onyōnjōne	
beige	peijisaek	3/2
belt	hōritti	5/3
(be) big	k'ū-	3/3
It's too big.	Nōmu k'ūmnida.	
birthday	saengil	4/3
black	kkamansaek	3/2
blanket(s)	tamnyo	2/3
blue	p'aransaek	3/2
blue jeans	ch'ōngbaji	3/3
(the) "Blue Train"	saemaūlho	8/2
boots (military)	kunhwa	5/3
bottle(s)	-byōng (used with native Korean numbers)	2/2
bound for; going to	-haeng	8/2
the bus to Pusan	Pusanhaeng pōsū	
brass bowl	notkūrūt	8/3
brass plate	notchōpshi	8/3
building	pilding	6/1

bus	pōsū	2/2
bus fare	pōsū yogūm	
bus terminal/station	pōsū t'ōminal	
express bus	kosokpōsū	
(be) busy	pappū-	1/1
I'm not really busy.	Pyōllo an pappūmnida.	
(to) buy	sa-	3/2
(am) going to buy; will buy	sagessūmnida	
by; next to	-yōp'e; -yōp'esō	6/2
by the way	kūrōnde	8/2
	C	
cannot	mot	6/3
I can't '(do it).	Chal mot hamnida.	
celadon porcelain	ch'ōngja	8/3
cent(s)	-chōn (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	2/3
cheap	ssage (used only with verbs)	3/2
Let's make this cheap.	Igō ssage hapshida.	
check; bill	kyesansō	7/2
chess set	changgi settū	8/3
chicken	takkgogi	7/2
child	ai	5/1
children	aidūl	
cigarette(s)	tambae	2/2
civilian (person)	minganin	1/3

coach (on the Saemaul train)	pot'ongshil	8/2
coach ticket(s)	pot'ongshilp'yo	
coffee	k'ōp'i	2/2
coffee shop	tabang	6/1
cola (any brand)	k'olla	3/1
(to) come	o-	2/3
(I) came	wassūmnida	
did (you) come	oshyōssūmnikka	
please come	oshipshio	
please come (informal)	oseyo	
cream	k'ūrim	7/1
cup(s); glass(es)	-jan (used with native Korean numbers)	2/2
	D	
(what) date	myōch'il	4/2
What's the date today?	Onūl myōch'irimnikka?	
daughter(s)	ttal	5/1
day of the week	yoil	4/2
What day of the week is it?	Musūn yoirimnikka?	
December	shibiwōl	4/2
department store	paekhwajōm	6/2
dinner	chōnyōk	5/2
Let's have dinner together.	Chōnyōk kach'i hapshida.	
(to) do	ha-	1/3
(am) doing	hamnida	

(am) going to do	hagessūmnida	
have done	haessūmnida	
have (you) done	hashyōssūmnikka	
doll(s); figurine(s)	inhyōng	8/3
dollar(s)	-bul (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	2/3
How much is a dollar in Korean money?	Ilbul hangukton ōlmamnikka?	
don't (do)	-ji maseyo	5/3
Don't wash that.	Chōgō set'ak haji maseyo.	
(I) don't know.	Morūgessūmnida.	6/3
downstairs	araech'ūng	6/1
downtown (area)	shinae	5/2
(to) drink	mashi-	7/3
(am) going to drink; will drink	mashigessūmnida	
let's drink	mashipshida	

E

E-2; PV2 (Army)	ibyōng	1/2
E-3; PFC (Army)	ilbyōng	1/2
E-4; SP4 (Army)	sangbyōng	1/2
E-5; SGT (Army)	pyōngjang	1/2
E-6; SSG (Army)	hasa	1/3
E-7; SFC (Army)	chungsa	1/3
E-8; MSG (Army)	sangsa	1/3
E-9; SGM (Army)	chuimsangsa	1/3

each; per	-ssik (used with native Korean numbers)	3/2
Give me one of each.	Hanassik chushipshio.	
early	iltchigi (used only with verbs)	5/3
(to) eat	mōk-	7/3
(I) will eat; will have	mōkkessūmnida	
English; English language	yōngō	6/3
Does anyone (here) speak English?	Nugu yōngō hashimnikka?	
What is it in English?	Yōngōro mwōmnikka?	
evening	chōnyōk	5/2
in the evening	chōnyōge	
exchange rate	hwannyul	2/3
What is the exchange rate?	Hwannyul ōlmamnikka?	
Excuse me.	Shillehamnida.	6/1
Excuse me, but...	Shillejiman,...	
(be) expensive	pissa-	3/3
It's very expensive.	Aju pissamnida.	
express	t'ūkkūp	8/2
express bus	kosokpōsū	
express train	t'ūkkūp yōlch'a	
	F	
(be) famous	yumyōng ha-	8/4
Is the Lotte Hotel famous?	Lotte hot'el yumyōng hamnikka?	

fare	yogūm	2/2
February	iwōl	4/2
fire	pul	6/3
There's a fire!	Pul nassūmnida!	
first; the first (one)	ch'ōtchae	6/1
first class (on the Saemaul train)	t'ūkshil	8/2
first class ticket(s)	t'ūkshilp'yo	
(it) fits	matsūmnida	3/3
(Please) follow me.	Chōl ttara oshipshio.	6/3
food (cooked or prepared)	ūmshik	5/2
fork	p'ok'ū	7/3
Friday	kūmyoil	4/2
friend	ch'ingu	1/2
(in) front of	-ap'e; -ap'esō	8/1
full-course dinner	-paekpan	7/2
a full-course pulgogi dinner	pulgogi paekpan	
G		
(to) get along	chinae-	1/1
How are (you) getting along?	ōttōk'e chinaeshimnikka?	
(to) get on; board (a vehicle)	t'a-	8/3
Get on number 130.	Paeksamshippōn t'ashipshio.	
(to) get out/off (a vehicle)	naeri-	8/1
I'll get out right here.	Paro yogisō naerigessūmnida.	
(to) give	chu-	2/1
please give (me)	chushipshio	

How much will you give me?	Ōlma chushigessūmnikka?	
(to) go	ka-	1/4
(am) going to go	kagessūmnida	
let's go	kapshida	
gold	kūm	3/3
gold necklace	kūmmokkōri	
gold ring	kūmbanji	
gold watch	kūmshigye	
(is) good; great	chossūmnida	3/2
Good morning; Good afternoon; Good evening.	Annyōnghashimnikka?	1/1
Good-bye. (to the person leaving)	Annyōngshi kashipshio.	1/4
Good-bye. (to the person staying behind)	Annyōngshi kyeshipshio.	1/4
green	ch'oroksaek	3/2
	H	
half-past (the hour)	-ban	4/1
half-past one	hanshiban	
(I) have; there is/are	issūmnida	2/1
(don't) have; there isn't/aren't	ōpsūmnida	2/2
have to; must	-ya twemnida	5/3
I have to (go to) work.	Kūnmu haeya twemnida.	
Hello.	Annyōnghashimnikka?	1/1
Hello! (to get someone's attention; not a greeting)	Yōboseyo!	6/1

(Please) help me; Can you help me?	Chom towa chushipshio.	6/3
here; this place	yōgi	2/3
here; this way; towards me	iri	5/3
(around) here; in this area	ibugūne	6/3
Is there a mess hall around here?	Ibugūne shiktang issūmnikka?	
hometown	kohyang	5/1
(is) hot; spicy	maepsūmnida	7/2
hotel	hot'el	6/1
hour(s)	-shigan (used with native Korean numbers)	4/1
It takes three hours.	Seshigan kōllimnida.	
house; home	chip	5/1
I'm going home.	Chibe kamnida.	
how	ōttōk'e	1/1
how do I get (to)	ōttōk'e kamnikka	
how is; how about; how do you like; what do you think of	ōttōsūmnikka	3/2
How about 40,000 won?	Samanwōn ōttōsūmnikka?	
how many	myōt	2/1
how many (of them)	myōtgae	
how many hours	myōtshigan	
how many persons	myōtbun myōtsaram	
how much	ōlmana	6/2
How much is it?	ōlmamnikka?	
how much time	shigan ōlmana	
husband (one's own husband)	namp'yōn	5/1

	I	
I	chōnūn	1/3
I, too; me, too	chōdo	
insignia of rank	kyegūpchang	5/3
intersection	negōri	6/2
at that intersection over there	chōnegōriesō	
(to) introduce	sogae ha-	1/2
Let me introduce my friend.	Che ch'ingu sogae hamnida.	
(to) iron; press clothing	tari-	5/3
Please iron this.	Igō tariseyo.	
It's been a long time.	Oraeganmanimnida.	1/1
	J	
January	irwōl	4/2
jewelry	posōk	3/3
jewelry box; jewelry case	posōkham	
juice	jyusū	7/1
July	ch'irwōl	4/2
June	yuwōl	4/2
just; merely	kūjō	1/2
So-so.	Kūjō kūrōssūmnida.	1/2
	K	
knife	naip'ū	7/3
Korea	hanguk	2/3

Korean language	hangungmal	7/1
What is it in Korean?	Hangungmallo mwōmnikka?	
Korean money	hangukton	2/3
	L	
late	nūtke (used only with verbs)	5/3
later	ittaga	1/4
I'll see you again later.	Ittaga tto pwepkessūmnida.	
(to) leave; depart	ch'ulbal ha-	8/2
What time does it leave?	Myōtshie ch'ulbal hamnikka?	
left; left side	wentchok	6/1
on the left	wentchoge	
to the left	wentchogūro	
lemon-lime soda	saida	2/2
let's; let's do so	kūrōpshida	5/2
let's do; let's make	hapshida	3/2
Let's make it 30,000 won.	Sammanwōne hapshida.	
(to) like	choaha-	5/2
Do you like beer?	Maekchu choahashimnikka?	
little; a little bit	chom	1/4
(am) looking for	ch'atsūmnida	2/3
(are you) looking for	ch'ajūshimnikka	2/3
lost; have lost (something)	irōssūmnida	6/3
I'm lost.	Kil irōssūmnida.	
lots (of); many	mani (used only with verbs)	3/2

M

main gate	chōngmun	8/1
March	samwōl	4/2
Marine(s); Marine Corps personnel	haebyōng	1/3
Marine Corps	haebyōngdae	1/3
market; marketplace	shijang	6/2
marriage	kyōlhon	1/3
Are you married?	Kyōlhon hashyōssūmnikka?	
matches	sōngnyang	7/1
matter; problem	il	6/3
What's the matter?	Musūn irimnikka?	
May	owōl	4/2
me (as opposed to "I")	chōl	6/3
Please follow me.	Chōl ttara oshipshio.	
meat	kogi	7/2
What kind of meat is it?	Musūn kogimnikka?	
(to) meet	manna-	5/2
let's meet	mannapshida	
(to) mend; fix	susōn ha-	5/3
please mend	susōn haseyo	
military police	emp' i	6/3
minutes	-pun (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	4/1
miss (form of address)	misū agassi	1/2 7/2

Monday	wōryoil	4/2
money	ton	2/3
American money	migukton	
How much is it in American money?	Migukton ōlmamnikka?	
Korean money	hangukton	
month	-wōl (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	4/2
next month	taūm tare	
more	tō	7/3
Bring me a little more, please.	Chom tō chushipshio.	
morning; a.m.	ojōn	4/1
in the morning	ojōne	
mother-of-pearl	chagae	8/3
a mother-of-pearl jewelry box	chagae posōkham	
movie theater; theater	kūkchang	5/2
Let's go see a movie.	Kūkchang kugyōng kapshida.	
mr; sir (to address adult males senior to you in age or status)	sōnsaengnim	1/1
mr. (to address adult males equal to you in age or status)	sōnsaeng	1/2
mr. (to address adult males junior to you in age or status)	misūt'ō	1/2
my	che; uri	1/2

N

napkin	naepk'in	7/3
Navy; Navy personnel	haegun	1/3
NCO; petty officer	hasagwan	1/3
necklace	mokkōri	3/3
need; necessity	p'iryo	7/1
(I) don't need (any); there's no need for	p'iryo ōpsūmnida	
next; the next (one)	taūm	1/4
next month	taūm tare	
next week	taūm chue	
next weekend	taūm chumare	
no	aniyo	1/3
not	an (used only with verbs)	1/1
American food is not hot.	Miguk ūmshik an maepsūmnida.	
(not) really; (not) particularly	pyōllo (only used in negative sentences)	1/1
I'm not really busy.	Pyōllo an pappūmnida.	
November	shibirwōl	4/2
now	chigūm	4/1
number (counter)	-pōn	8/3
Take the number 80 (bus).	P'alshippōn t'ashipshio.	

O

O-1; 2LT (Army)	sowi	1/1
O-2; 1LT (Army)	chungwi	1/1

GLOSSARY

ENGLISH-KOREAN

0-3; CPT (Army)	taewi	1/1
0-4; MAJ (Army)	soryōng	1/1
0-5; LTC (Army)	chungryōng	1/1
0-6; COL (Army)	taeryōng	1/1
o'clock	-shi (used with native Korean numbers)	4/1
October	shiwōl	4/2
Of course (it's so).	Mullonimnida.	1/3
officer	changgyo	1/3
oh (exclamation)	a	1/3
Oh, wow! Gosh! Oh, no! (exclamation)	Aigu!	8/3
once; one time	hanbōn	6/1
orange(s)	orenji	7/1
orange (color)	orenjisaek	
orange juice	orenji jyusū	
order(s); serving(s) (of food)	-inbun (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	7/2
overpass (pedestrian)	yukkyo	6/2
	P	
pack(s) (of cigarettes)	-gap (used with native Korean numbers)	3/1
pants; trousers	baji	3/3
parents	pumonim	5/1

pear(s)	pae	2/1
person(s)	-bun -saram	2/1 2/1
pickled vegetables	kimch'i	5/2
platinum; white gold	paekkūm	3/3
platinum necklace	paekkūmmokkōri	
platinum ring	paekkūmbanji	
Pleased to meet you.	Ch'ōm pwepsūmnida.	1/2
police substation	p'ach'ulso	6/3
pork	twaejigogi	7/2
post; installation	pudae	6/3
price	kapshi	2/2
How much is the price?	Kapshi ōlmamnikka?	
	Q	
quickly	ōsō ppalli	2/3 5/3
Come right in.	Ōsō oshipshio.	
Please iron this quickly.	Igō ppalli set'ak haseyo.	
quilt(s)	ibul	3/2
	R	
railroad station	yōk	6/2
red	ppalgansaek	3/2
rest room	hwajangshil	6/1
restaurant	ūmshikchōm	5/2

restaurant; dining room; mess hall	shiktang	6/1
ribs (beef), marinated and barbecued	kalbi	5/2
rib stew (from beef)	kalbitchim	7/2
rice (steamed)	pap	7/3
rice wine (unrefined)	makkōli	7/3
rice with thick soup made from beef bones	komt'ang	7/2
rice with vegetables and meat	pibimpap	7/2
right; exactly	paro	8/1
I'll get out right here.	Paro yōgisō naerigessūmnida.	
(the) right; right side	orūntchok	6/1
on the right	orūntchoge	
to the right	orūntchogūro	
right away; immediately	kot	5/3
(That's) right.	Kūrōssūmnida.	1/2
(Is that) right?	Kūrōssūmnikka?	1/3
ring	panji	3/3
room	pang	6/1
	S	
salt	sogūm	7/3
Saturday	t'oyoil	4/2
(please) say; tell me	malssūmhae chushipshio	6/1
second; the second (one)	tultchae	6/1
second division	isadan	8/1

(to) see; look at	po-	3/2
Let me see some quilts.	Ibul chom popshida.	
(will) see; meet	pwepkessūmnida	1/4
I'll see you again.	Tto pwepkessūmnida.	
September	kuwōl	4/2
service member	kunin	1/3
shoes	kuḏu	5/3
silk blouse	shilk'ū brausū	8/3
single; not married	mihon	1/3
(I'm) single.	Mihonimnida.	
size	saijū	3/3
slowly	ch'ōnch'ōnhi	6/1
(is) small	chaksūmnida	3/3
so; therefore	kūrōnikka (to begin a sentence)	2/3
So-so.	Kūjō kūrōssūmnida.	1/2
sofa	sop'a	2/3
son(s)	adūl	5/1
(I'm) sorry.	Mianhamnida.	6/1
soy sauce	kanjang	7/3
still; yet	ajik	1/3
straight (ahead)	ttokparo	6/2
sugar	sōlt'ang	7/1
Sunday	iryoil	4/2

T

table	t'eibūl	2/3
(to) take (time)	kōlli-	4/1
How much time does it take?	Shigan ōlmana kōllimnikka?	
tangerine(s)	milgam	2/1
taste; flavor	mashi	5/2
It's delicious.	Mashi issūmnida.	
It tastes good.	Mashi chossūmnida.	
taxi	t'aekshi	6/3
tea (generic)	ch'a	7/1
black tea	hongch'a	
ginseng tea	insamch'a	
telephone	chōnhwa	6/3
Thank you.	Kamsahamnida.	3/1
	Komapsūmnida.	3/1
	Sugo haessūmnida.	5/2
that (one); those	chōgō	5/3
then; (as a result)	kūrōmyōn (used only at the beginning of a sentence)	6/2
(over) there; that place	chōgi	3/1
there is/are; (I) have	issūmnida	2/1
there is/are	kyeshimnida (used only to refer to people)	2/1
there isn't; (I) don't have	ōpsūmnida	2/2
these days; lately	yosae	1/1
things to do; work to do	halil	5/2
third; the third (one)	setchae	6/1

this (one); these	igō	2/3
Thursday	mogyoil	4/2
ticket(s)	p'yo	8/2
bus ticket(s)	pōsūp'yo	
coach ticket(s)	pot'ongshilp'yo	
first class ticket(s)	t'ūkshilp'yo	
train ticket(s)	kich'ap'yo	
ticket window	maep'yogu	8/2
time	shigan	4/1
how much time	shigan ōlmana	
Do you have (any) time?	Shigan issūmnikka?	
(what) time	myōtshi	4/1
What time? At what time?	Myōtshieyo?	
What time is it?	Myōtshimnikka?	
today	onūl	4/2
tonight; this evening	onūl chōnyōge	
together; along (with)	kach'i	5/1
tomorrow	naeil	1/4
too; also	-do	5/1
too (as in too large, too small, etc.)	nōmu	3/3
It's too expensive.	Nōmu pissamnida.	
traffic signal	shinhodūng	6/2
train	kich'a	8/2
	yōlch'a	8/2
express train	t'ūkkūp yōlcha	
train ticket(s)	kich'ap'yo	

(please) try on (clothing)	ibōboshipshio	3/3
Try it some time.	Hanbōn haeboshipshio.	7/1
Tuesday	hwayoil	4/2
turn; please turn	toshipshio	6/2
	U	
underpass (pedestrian)	chihado	6/2
(I) understand; (I) see; All right.	Algessūmnida. Arassūmnida.	1/3 5/2
uniform(s), military	kunbok	5/3
upstairs	wich'ūng	6/1
	V	
vegetable side dishes	namul	7/3
very; very much	aju	3/3
	W	
wallet	chigap	6/3
warrant officer	chunwi	1/1
(to) wash (clothes)	set'ak ha-	5/3
Please wash this uniform.	Kunbok igō set'ak haseyo.	
watch; clock	shigye	2/1
watching; sightseeing; browsing; window-shopping	kugyōng	5/2
Let's go sightseeing.	Kugyōng kapshida.	
water	mul	7/3
we; our	uri	5/1

Wednesday	suyoil	4/2
weekend; during the weekend	chumare	5/2
next weekend	taūm chumare	
this weekend	ibōn chumare	
well; fine	chal	1/1
well; well then	kūrōm	1/3
Well, I'm not so sure...	Kūlsseyo...	3/2
what	mwō	2/3
What are you looking for? May I help you?	Mwō ch'ajūshimnikka?	
What would you like to have? (to eat or drink)	Mwō hashigessūmnikka?	
what; what kind of	musūn	5/2
what day of the week	musūn yoil	
when	ōnje	4/2
where	ōdi	5/2
from where; where (at)	ōdiso	
white	hinsaek	3/2
who; whom	nugu	6/3
Why?	Waeyo?	1/4
wife (one's own wife)	chipsaram	5/1
wife (someone else's)	puin (also, form of address for a married woman)	5/1
wife (someone else's)	samonim (also, polite form of ad- dress for a married woman)	5/1
wine	p'odoju	7/3

wonton soup	mandukuk	7/2
(to) work; perform duty	kūnmu ha-	5/3
I have to work at 3:00.	Seshie kūnmu haeya twemnida.	
Y		
year(s)	-nyōn (used with Sino-Korean numbers)	4/3
in '85	p'alshibonyōne	
last year	changnyōn	
next year	naenyōn	
this year	kūmnyōn	
yellow	noransaek	3/2
yes	ne (also used to acknowledge a greeting)	1/1
You're welcome.	Ch'ōnmaneyo.	6/2

NUMBERS

<u>Native Korean</u>		<u>Sino-Korean</u>
hana (han-)	1	il
tul (tu-)	2	i
set (se-)	3	sam
net (ne-)	4	sa
tasōt	5	o
yōsōt	6	yuk
ilgop	7	ch'il
yōdōl	8	p'al
ahop	9	ku
yōl	10	ship
yōlhana	11	shibil
yōltul	12	shibi
yōlset	13	shipsam
yōlnet	14	shipsa
yōltasōt	15	shibo
yōlyōsōt	16	shimnyuk
yōlilgop	17	shipch'il
yōlyōdōl	18	shipp'al
yōlahop	19	shipku

COUNTERS

-bun	persons	-bul	dollars
-byōng	bottles	-chōn	cents
-gae	objects	-il	dates
-gap	packs	-inbun	orders; servings
-jan	cups; glasses	-nyōn	years
-jang	tickets	-pōn	numbers
-saram	persons	-pun	minutes
-shi	o'clock	-wōl	months
-shigan	hours	-wōn	Korean money
-ssik	each; per		

SINO-KOREAN NUMBERS

20	iship	40	saship
21	ishibil	41	sashibil
22	ishibi (etc.)	42	sashibi (etc.)
30	samship	50	oship
31	samshibil	51	oshibil
32	samshibi (etc.)	52	oshibi (etc.)

10	ship
20	iship
30	samship
40	saship
50	oship
60	yukship
70	ch'ilship
80	p'alship
90	kuship
100	paek
1,000	ch'ōn
10,000	man
100,000	shimman
1,000,000	paengman
10,000,000	ch'ōnman

Appendix – List of Images

Note: The attribution names and licenses are current as of Jan 2011 as given in the images original source location.

PDF Page(s)	Document Page(s)	Image Link	License	Modifications
2	Title page	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Seoul-Gyeongbokgung-The_re-enactment_of_Sejong_the_Great%27s_enthronement-04.jpg	US Public Domain	
17	12	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Seoul-Lee_Myung_Bak_and_Kai_Jorgensen.jpg	Public Domain	Some faces blurred
18, 58, 94, 128, 158, 198, 232, 262, 308	13, 53, 89, 123, 153, 193, 227, 257, 303	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Seoul-Dongdaemun-02.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	monochrome
18	13	http://www.army.mil/-images/2008/06/10/16838/	US Public Domain	Some faces blurred
19, 29, 37, 47, 85, 95, 105, 115, 159, 173, 185, 199, 209, 219, 233, 243, 251, 263, 275, 285, 295	14, 24, 32, 42, 80, 90, 100, 110, 154, 168, 180, 194, 204, 214, 228, 238, 246, 258, 270, 285, 290	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Temple_Fu_Dog.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	cropped monochrome
19	14	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Seoul-Namdaemun-Sungnyemun-08.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
20, 38, 48, 86, 96, 106, 116, 160, 174, 186, 200, 210, 220, 234, 244, 247, 264, 276, 287, 297	15, 33, 43, 81, 91, 101, 111, 155, 169, 181, 195, 205, 215, 229, 239, 242, 259, 271, 282, 292	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Calligrapher_Yiheyuan.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	cropped monochrome
21	16	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Drum_at_Bulguksa-Gyeongju-Korea-02.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/deed.en	

22, 31, 39, 49, 97, 107, 117, 161, 175, 187, 201, 211, 221, 235, 245, 253, 265, 277, 288, 298	17, 26, 34, 44, 92, 102, 112, 156, 170, 182, 196, 206, 216, 230, 240, 258, 260, 272, 283, 293	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Gyeongbokgung-Guard.ceremony-14.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	cropped monochrome
26	21	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Seokguram_Buddha.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
36	31	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Seoul-Insadong-Korean.Traditional.Porcelains.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	
45	40	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Entrance_at_Girimsa-Gyeongju-Korea-01.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/deed.en	
46	41	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Gyeongju-Bulguksa-22.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	
47	42	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Jikjitempleentrance.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
48	43	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Sinheungsa-Deva_Kings-02.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
54	49	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Andong-Pagoda_near_Gwandeokri-02.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/deed.en	
55, 91, 125, 155, 195, 229, 259, 305	50, 86, 120, 150, 190, 224, 254, 300	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Janggu.jpg	Public Domain	Cropped Monochrome Modified
57	52	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korean_masks10.jpg	Public Domain	
70	65	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Unjusa_4538-07_Buddha.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
80	75	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Busan-Beomeosa_Sallyeonggak_6282-07.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
90	85	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Danyang-Guinsa_Stele3061-07.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
93	88	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Porcelain_Shop_-_Seoul.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	

94	89	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Janggu-01.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	
103	98	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Gyeongju-Bulguksa-28.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
104	99	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dabotap_at_Bulguksa-Gyeongju-Korea-01.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/deed.en	
113	108	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Seoul-Insadong-01.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
114	109	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Busy_street_Seoul.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	
116	111	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Seoul_Street_2010.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
124	119	http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Goryeo_dyansty-Hyangungak-Standing_Maitreya_statue-01.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
127	122	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Gyeongju-Bulguksa-20.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	
128	123	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Haeinsa-Tripitaka_Koreana-03.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
154	149	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cheomseongdae-1.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
157	152	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Seoul-Deoksugung-03.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	
171	166	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Seoul-Changdeokgung-Donhwamun-03.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/	
172	167	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Gimje-Geumsansa_Tanggan_Chiju_4084-07.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
183	178	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Jecheon-Cheongpung_Cultural_Properties_Center_Dohwa-ri_House_3247-07.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
194	189	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bulguksa_Temple_Gyeong_Ju.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	
197	192	http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Andong-Jangseung_and_sotdae_near_Ongcheonri.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/	
198	193	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Gyeongju-Bulguksa-07.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	

200	195	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:BellofKingSeongdeok.jpg	Public Domain	
208	203	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gyeongbok-gung_palace.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	Cropped
217	212	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Seoul_bus_B144.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
218	213	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Seoul_Korea_Bus_Stop.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
227	222	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Seoul_Station_front_entrance.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	
228	223	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:KTX_at_seoul_station.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
231	226	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korean.cuisine-Andong_jjimdalk-01.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
232	227	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Seoul-Sosim-Vegetarian_restaurant-01.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	
242	237	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea.royal.cuisine-Sinseollo-01.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
250	245	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korean_barbeque-Bulgogi-18.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
261	256	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gangbyeonbukro_in_Rushhour_2.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
262	257	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gangbyeonbukro_in_Rushhour_2.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	Cropped
273	268	http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Osan_Air_Force_Base_Main_Gate.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/	
274	269	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:CampBonifas1.jpg	Public Domain	
276	271	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Incheon_Bus_Terminal.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
283	278	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Busan_Vicinity_Bus_Station.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	Cropped
284	279	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Busan_Central_Bus_Terminal3.JPG	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en	
287	282	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Sokcho-Beach.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0/deed.en	

308	303	http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Hangul_advertisement.jpg	http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/deed.en	
-----	-----	---	---	--